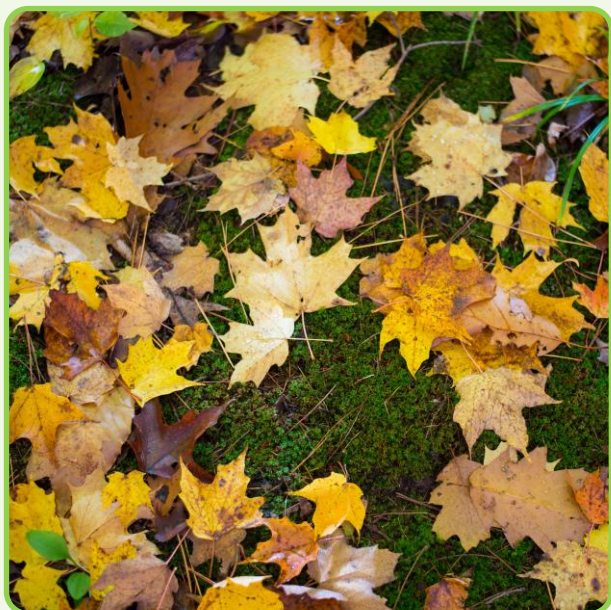




Forest Stewardship Standard

FSC FOREST STEWARDSHIP STANDARD FOR CANADA

FSC-STD-CAN-01.1-2026_EN



Photo credits:

The Regional Municipality of York, Ontario, Canada ©FSC Canada.

NOTE ON THIS ENGLISH VERSION:

This is the official version of the FSC Forest Stewardship Standard that is approved by FSC International, and it is available at connect.fsc.org. Any translation of this version is not an official translation approved by FSC International. If there is any conflict or inconsistency between the approved English version and any translated version, the English version shall prevail.

® 2026 Forest Stewardship Council, A.C. All Rights Reserved

FSC® F000100

You may not distribute, modify, transmit, reuse, reproduce, re-post or use the copyrighted materials from this document for public or commercial purposes, without the express written consent of the publisher. You are hereby authorized to view, download, print and distribute individual pages from this document subject for informational purposes only.

Title:	FSC Forest Stewardship Standard for Canada
Document code:	FSC-STD-CAN-01.1-2026_EN
Scope:	All forest types (<i>details in section “B.2 Scope” of this standard</i>).
Status:	Approved
Approval body:	Policy and Standards Committee
Dates:	Approval date: 15 June 2026 Publication date: 1 July 2026 Effective date: 1 July 2026
Timeframes	Transition period¹: 18 months from the effective date Validity period: Until revised, replaced or withdrawn
Local contact:	FSC Canada 240 Richmond Street West Toronto, ON M5V 1V6 Canada Contact: Tina Langille-Hayward (Director of Policy & Standards) Phone: +1(780) 213 - 4602 Email: t.hayward@ca.fsc.org
FSC Policy and Performance Unit contact	FSC International – Policy and Performance Unit Adenauerallee 134 53113 Bonn Germany Phone: +49 -(0)228 -36766 -0 Fax: +49 -(0)228 -36766 -65 Email: country_requirements@fsc.org

¹ The transition period is the timeline in which there is a parallel phase-in of the new version and the phase-out of the old version of the standard. By the transition period's end date, certificate holders based on the previous version of this Forest Stewardship Standard are expected to have been evaluated against this revised version and any nonconformities that were identified against the revised set of requirements to be closed (this applies only to major non-conformities, if the certification body still operates under FSC-STD-20-007 V4-0). Certificates issued against the previous version of this Forest Stewardship Standard will automatically expire and be considered terminated at the transition period's end date.

Version control

Version	Description	Final Approval Date
V1.0	Initial version, FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Canada (FSC-STD-CAN-01-2018) based on P&C V5-2, was conditionally approved by the PSC at their 36 th meeting on 24 April 2019, and finally approved by the Performance and Standards Unit on 13 May 2019.	13/05/2019
V1.1	Partial revision, FSC Forest Stewardship Standard for Canada (FSC-STD-CAN-01.1-2026 EN) based on P&C V5-3, was conditionally approved by the PSC at their 67 th meeting on 8 May 2026, and finally approved by the Policy and Performance Unit on 15 June 2026. <i>[Detailed information under section C.5]</i>	15/06/2026

This standard is subject to the review and revision requirements as described in FSC-STD-60-006 (V1-2) EN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

A	Foreword	7
A.1	The Forest Stewardship Council (FSC)	7
A.2	FSC Canada and the Standard Development Group for the Forest Stewardship Standard	7
A.3	The FSC Principles and Criteria	8
B	Preamble	9
B.1	Objective	9
B.2	Scope	10
B.3	Responsibility for conformity	12
B.4	Note on the use of indicators and other elements in the standard	13
B.5	Interpretations and disputes	14
C	Context	15
C.1	Forest management in Canada	15
C.2	Members of the Standards Development Group	21
C.3	Experts advising the Standard Development Group	21
C.4	Background information on the standard development (V1-0)	21
C.5	Summary of the revision process (V1-1)	22
D	Relevant FSC documents	24
E	<i>Principles*, criteria* and indicators*</i>	26
	<i>PRINCIPLE* 1: COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS</i>	26
	<i>PRINCIPLE* 2: WORKERS* RIGHTS AND EMPLOYMENT CONDITIONS</i>	30
	<i>PRINCIPLE* 3: INDIGENOUS PEOPLES* RIGHTS</i>	33
	<i>PRINCIPLE* 4: COMMUNITY RELATIONS</i>	40
	<i>PRINCIPLE* 5: BENEFITS FROM THE FOREST*</i>	45
	<i>PRINCIPLE* 6: ENVIRONMENTAL VALUES* AND IMPACTS</i>	49
	<i>PRINCIPLE* 7: MANAGEMENT PLANNING</i>	77
	<i>PRINCIPLE* 8: MONITORING AND ASSESSMENT</i>	81
	<i>PRINCIPLE* 9: HIGH CONSERVATION VALUES*</i>	86
	<i>PRINCIPLE* 10: IMPLEMENTATION OF MANAGEMENT ACTIVITIES*</i>	97
F	Annexes	104
Annex A	Minimum list of applicable laws, regulations and nationally ratified international treaties, conventions and agreements	104
Annex B	Training Requirements for <i>Workers*</i>	105
Annex C	<i>Worker*</i> s Health & Safety Program	106

Annex D	High Conservation Value (HCV) Framework	107
Annex E	<i>Dispute*</i> Resolution	123
Annex F	Culturally Appropriate <i>Engagement*</i>	127
Annex G	Caribou in the Standard	129
Annex H	Delineation of <i>Intact Forest Landscapes*</i>	133
Annex I	Glossary of terms	137
G	References	160
H	List of Contributors	163

A FOREWORD

(Informative section)

A.1 The Forest Stewardship Council (FSC)

The Forest Stewardship Council A.C. (FSC) was established in 1993, as a follow-up to the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (the Earth Summit at Rio de Janeiro, 1992) with the mission to promote environmentally appropriate, socially beneficial, and economically viable management of the world's forests.

FSC provides a system for voluntary accreditation and independent third-party certification. This system allows certificate holders to market their products and services as the result of environmentally appropriate, socially beneficial and economically viable forest management. FSC also sets standards for the development and approval of Forest Stewardship Standards (FSS) and Interim Forest Stewardship Standards which are based on the FSC Principles and Criteria. In addition, FSC sets standards for the accreditation of conformity assessment bodies (also known as certification bodies) that certify conformance with FSC's standards.

Environmentally appropriate forest management ensures that the production of timber, non-timber products and ecosystem services maintains the forest's biodiversity, productivity, and ecological processes.

Socially beneficial forest management helps both local people and society at large to enjoy long-term benefits and also provides strong incentives to local people to sustain the forest resources and adhere to long-term management plans.

Economically viable forest management means that forest operations are structured and managed so as to be sufficiently profitable, without generating financial profit at the expense of the forest resource, the ecosystem, or affected communities. The tension between the need to generate adequate financial returns and the principles of responsible forest operations can be reduced through efforts to market the full range of forest products and services for their best value.

A.2 FSC Canada and the Standard Development Group for the Forest Stewardship Standard

FSC Canada is an independent, non-profit, non-governmental organization whose mission is to promote responsible forest management in Canada in accordance with internationally recognized Principles and Criteria. Established as a national office in 1998, its current headquarters are located in Toronto, Ontario since 2025.

This standard has been developed by a national Standard Development Group (SDG) which was registered by the FSC Performance and Standards Unit (PSU) in 2013.

The work was done in conformity with the requirements of the FSC Standards <FSC-STD-60-006 (V1-2) Process requirements for the development and maintenance of National Forest Stewardship Standards> and <FSC-STD-60-002 (V1-0) Structure and Content of National Forest Stewardship Standards>.

A.3 The FSC Principles and Criteria

FSC first published the FSC Principles and Criteria in November 1994 as a performance-based, outcome-orientated, worldwide standard. The Principles and Criteria focus on field performance of forest management rather than on the management systems for delivering that field performance.

There is no hierarchy between the Principles or between Criteria. They share equal status, validity and authority, and apply jointly and severally at the level of the individual Management Unit.

The FSC Principles and Criteria together with the International Generic Indicators (IGI) provide the basis for the development of locally adapted Forest Stewardship Standards (FSS).

B PREAMBLE

B.1 Objective

(Informative section)

This standard establishes the required elements with which FSC accredited certification bodies (CBs) shall assess conformance of The Organizations (see Section B.3 below). It represents the Canadian adaptation of <FSC-STD-01-001 Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship> and <FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0 EN International Generic Indicators>.

The globally applicable FSC Principles and Criteria (P&C) for Forest Stewardship provide an internationally recognized standard for responsible forest management. However, any international standard for forest management needs to be adapted at the regional or national level to reflect the diverse legal, social, and geographical conditions of forests in different parts of the world. The FSC P&C therefore requires the addition of indicators that are adapted to regional or national context to be implemented at the Management Unit level.

With the approval of <FSC-STD-60-004 V2-1 EN International Generic Indicators> (IGI) by the FSC Board of Directors in March 2015, the adaptation of the P&C to regional or national conditions is done using the IGI standard as the starting point. This has the advantage to:

- Ensure the consistent implementation of the P&C across the globe;
- Improve and strengthen the credibility of the FSC System;
- Improve the consistency and quality of Forest Stewardship Standards;
- Support a faster and more efficient approval process of Forest Stewardship Standards.

The FSC Principles and Criteria together with a set of national indicators approved by FSC Policy and Standards Committee (PSC) constitute an FSC Forest Stewardship Standard (FSS).

The development of the FSS follows the requirements set out in the following normative requirements of FSC:

- <FSC-PRO-60-006 (V2-0) Development and Transfer of National Forest Stewardship Standards to the FSC Principles and Criteria Version 5-1>;
- <FSC-STD-60-002 (V1-0) Structure and Content of National Forest Stewardship Standards>; and
- <FSC-STD-60-006 (V1-2) Process requirements for the development and maintenance of National Forest Stewardship Standards>.

The above documents have been developed by the FSC to improve consistency and transparency in certification decisions between different CBs in different parts of the world, and thereby to enhance the credibility of the FSC certification scheme.

B.2 Scope

(Normative section)

This standard shall be applied in the following scope:

Geographic region	Canada
Forest types	All forest types
Ownership types	All types of ownership, including public, private and others
Scale and intensity categories (According to section 6 of FSC-STD-60-002)	All categories of Management Units, excluding Small and Low Intensity Managed Forests (SLIMF) and Community Forests.
Forest products (According to FSC-STD-40-004a)	Rough wood; Non-timber forest products (NTFPs) (<i>see notes on applicability below</i>)

Notes on applicability

This standard does not apply to small-scale forests, low intensity forests and community forests. Refer to Preamble section II - Scope and Application of the Standard (Scale, Intensity & Risk). For these types of forests, a separate standard ([FSC-STD-CAN-01-2024 SIR EN](#)) provides the specific requirements that apply for small-scale, low intensity and community forests.

The management and certification of non-timber forest products (NTFPs) is optional and may be applicable if a certification body has developed additional NTFP-specific interim requirements that meet ADVICE-20-007-05 of [FSC-DIR-20-007 FSC Directive on Forest Management Evaluations](#).

Please note that some adjustments may occur to the Indicators of Criterion 10.7 following the approval of the version 3 of the FSC Pesticides Policy. Also, other Indicators may be altered in future as determined by FSC International changes to policies and/or because of the implementation of General Assembly Motions.

Application of the Standard

FSC forest management certification is designed to provide a credible guarantee that all *Forest Management Units (FMUs)** included in the scope of the certificate conform with the requirements of the Forest Stewardship Standard specified on the certificate. FSC certification therefore applies to the FMU and all activities related to forest management that occurs within its boundaries.

The Organization is the entity holding or applying for certification that has control and authority over the management of the *Forest Management Unit**. FSC certification does not apply solely to The Organization's activities, but to all activities within the FMU. The Organization may be the forest owner, forest manager, or both. It is the responsibility of The Organization to demonstrate that the Standard's requirements have been met within the FMU. In several instances, The Organization may rely on the efforts of other parties who play a role in meeting certain requirements (e.g. government entities, Indigenous Peoples and stakeholders). However, where gaps in performance exist, it is the responsibility of The Organization to address these gaps, within their sphere of influence.

In cases where discrete portions of the forest are beyond the management control of The Organization, The Organization may excise these areas from the scope of the certificate. Refer to FSC policies and

procedures regarding excision (FSC-POL-20-003).

Scale, Intensity and Risk

FSC recognizes that there exists a continuum of risk from forest management activities depending on the scale, intensity and context of those activities. This Standard is designed to be applied to all size and types of forests in Canada except for those identified as:

- **Small-scale forests:** Forests that are less than or equal to 1000 ha in size.
- **Low intensity forests:** Forests with a harvesting rate of less than 20% of the mean annual growth in timber, and either an annual harvest or an annual average harvest of less than 5,000 m³ (averaged over the 5-year certificate lifetime).
- **Community Forests:** Any forestry operation managed by a local government, community group, First Nation or community-held corporation for the benefit of the entire community, in which profits are cycled back into the community.

For these forests, a separate scale, intensity and risk (SIR) Standard for Canada (FSC-STD-CAN-01-2024 SLIMF) provides the specific requirements that apply in these cases.

However, this Standard does include requirements that take operational scale, intensity and risk of impacts into account. These considerations are embedded within specific Indicators and Intent Boxes throughout the Standard.

Interpretation and Use of the Standard

Forest managers, Indigenous Peoples, local communities and other stakeholders are working in a dynamic system where the social, political, economic and environmental context can change. This can bring a level of uncertainty in how forest managers adapt practices and how certification bodies evaluate Standard requirements.

In a balance between clarity and brevity, the Indicators are written so that their intent is clear enough to avoid misinterpretation by certification bodies and The Organization working towards certification. In many instances, Intent Boxes are included for individual Indicators to provide guidance on the appropriate interpretation of that Indicator's requirements. However, in creating one national Standard that applies over a wide geographic, social and ecological range, there may be cases where local or regional considerations have not been fully accounted for in the Standard, or where circumstances unique to The Organization's context are specifically relevant.

Varying degrees of technical direction is provided in the Indicators, and all efforts should be taken to meet the technical requirements. However, in addressing the requirements of Indicators, The Organization and certification body must keep in mind that technical requirements are in place to achieve the overall intent of Criteria and Indicators. While it may be tempting to analyze individual words and phrases, an overly bureaucratic or legalistic approach to implementing Indicator requirements may in some cases lead to actions not entirely consistent with achieving the intent. Application and evaluation of the Standard will require judicious and logical interpretation of the requirements by auditors and assessors, taking the context of specific forests, ecological regions and social environments into account.

A Precautionary Approach

FSC recognizes that there are circumstances where The Organization is required to act with incomplete knowledge of cause and effect relationships. In such cases, the Standard advocates the use of a precautionary approach, whereby The Organization avoid actions that may lead to irreversible damage to the environment or a threat to human welfare, and instead consider alternative management strategies. By placing primacy on prudence and caution in dealing with uncertainty, management actions should only

proceed when The Organization is confident that severe negative effects will not occur.

Sphere of Influence

The phrase 'sphere of influence' is used throughout the Standard in recognition that there may be circumstances where The Organization does not have direct control or authority over the achievement of an outcome, and a collaborative effort is required. Sphere of influence requirements are commonly related to the actions of external parties, and/or landscape-scale issues.

The expectation for working within The Organization's sphere of influence is that The Organization demonstrates meaningful and sincere attempts, often over a sustained period, to work in a professional manner with colleagues and associates outside of The Organization to achieve the intent of the Indicator.

These expectations align with FSC's goals to address increasingly complex challenges through collaboration with certified and non-certified parties to achieve longer term solutions to how people utilize and benefit from the forest.

B.3 Responsibility for conformity

(Normative section)

The requirements in this standard cover all of The Organization's management activities that are related to the Management Unit, whether within the Management Unit or outside; whether directly undertaken or contracted out.

In terms of geographical space, the requirements in this standard apply generally to the entire geographic space inside the boundary of the Management Unit which is being submitted for (re)certification. However, some of the Criteria and indicators apply beyond the boundary of the Management Unit. This would include those infrastructural facilities that are part of the Management Unit, as defined by the FSC Principles and Criteria.

This standard is to be used in conjunction with international, national and local laws and regulations.

Where there might be situations of conflict between the requirements in this standard and laws, specific FSC procedures will apply.

Responsibility for ensuring conformity with the requirements in this standard lies with the person(s) or entities that is/are the certificate applicant or holder. For the purpose of FSC certification, this person(s) or entities are referred to as 'The Organization'.

The Organization is responsible for decisions, policies and management activities related to the Management Unit.

The Organization is also responsible for demonstrating that other persons or entities that are permitted or contracted by The Organization to operate in, or for the benefit of the Management Unit, conform with the requirements in this standard.

The Organization is required to take corrective actions in the event of such persons or entities not being in conformance with the requirements in this standard.

B.4 Note on the use of indicators and other elements in the standard

(Normative section)

The FSC Canada Standard maintains the internationally established hierarchical structure where:

- **Principles** are at the highest organizational level. These are the essential rules or elements of forest stewardship. FSC's Standard includes 10 Principles as prescribed by FSC International. Each Principle contains a series of Criteria, which subdivide the Principle.
- **Criteria** provide the means of judging if a Principle has been fulfilled. Each Criterion contains one or more Indicators.
- **Indicators** are the components of the Standard that are directly applicable to The Organizations. Indicators contain the performance direction that The Organizations must meet or to which they must adhere.

Together, the Principles and Criteria are the foundation of FSC certification, and are not subject to revision at the national or regional levels. Indicators have been specifically customized and approved for application in the Canadian context. All Principles, Criteria and Indicators share equal status, validity and authority, and apply at the level of the Management Unit.

Normative elements in the standard are:

Scope, effective date, validity period, glossary of terms, principles, criteria, indicators, tables and annexes, (as well as other addenda which might be produced in association with this standard), unless indicated otherwise.

Non-normative elements in the standard that can be used for guidance only, are:

Intent boxes that appear under some criteria and indicators, which provide guidance and context for the users.

The compulsory nature of instructions found in the Principles, Criteria and Indicators is defined as follows:

Verbal forms for the expression of provisions

Adapted from *ISO/IEC Directives Part 2: Rules for the structure and drafting of International Standards*

“shall”	: indicates requirements strictly to be followed in order to conform with the standard; ‘shall not’ indicates a prohibition.
----------------	--

“should”	: indicates that among several possibilities one is recommended as particularly suitable, without mentioning or excluding others, or that a certain course of action is preferred but not necessarily re-quired. The Organization can meet these requirements in an equivalent way provided this can be demonstrated and justified.
-----------------	---

“may”	: indicates a course of action permissible within the limits of the standard; ‘need not’ indicates that a specified course of action is not a requirement.
--------------	--

“can”	: is used for statements of possibility and capability, whether material, physical or causal.
--------------	---

“Includes”	: implies that all elements in the list must be addressed.
-------------------	--

The text of the Principles and the Criteria under Section F contain terms that are formatted in *italics* and marked with an asterisk (*). These terms are defined in the annex of Glossary of terms. The terms that have been marked with an asterisk (*) and formatted in italics in the indicators' text and annexes, are local terms which have been adapted or added to apply to the local circumstances for this standard only.

While the objectives, thresholds or requirements for conformance are outlined within each Indicator, the specific collection of documentation and other evidence to demonstrate conformance is up to The Organization.

B.5 Interpretations and disputes

(Normative section)

Interpretation requests regarding the FSC Forest Stewardship Standards are submitted through the National Offices and in case there is no National Office, directly to FSC for processing and approval. Approved interpretations are published in the international FSC website (see: INT-STD-60-006_01 of Forest Management Interpretations).

Disputes between stakeholders concerning certification requirements are managed by FSC dispute resolution procedure (see: <FSC-PRO-01-008 Processing Complaints in the FSC Certification Scheme>).

C CONTEXT

(Informative section)

C.1 Forest management in Canada

Land ownership and tenure

The vast majority of Canada's forest land, about 94%, is publicly owned and managed by provincial, territorial and federal governments¹. These public forest lands are commonly referred to as Crown land, and generally include very large forest tracts, ranging from thousands to millions of hectares.

Only 6% of Canada's forest lands are privately owned¹. These private forest lands include large forests owned by forest companies, notably in New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Ontario, Québec and British Columbia. The remaining private forest lands include small family-owned forests and woodlots¹.

Community forests are not limited to a particular type of property. They can be considered public or private land, depending on the particular tenure arrangement³. However, the two common elements of community forests are that control and management decisions are made by the community, for the benefit of the entire community³. Examples of community forests include municipal forests, county forests, demonstration forests, and Conservation Authority lands.

Rights to harvest timber on Crown land is granted by provincial and territorial governments. These tenure arrangements include the responsibilities and provisions tied to the right to harvest.

Overlapping tenure

Crown land is a shared space which aims to meet the interests and activities of various parties. Often on Crown land, tenure rights granted to an organization are not exclusive, but rather, are shared with other parties also operating on the land. These can be other forestry operations with rights to harvest a component of the forest resource, or non-forestry operations who have rights to alter forests while extracting or managing other resources (e.g. mining, oil and gas, and hydroelectric operations).

Where there is overlap by tenure holders in the forest sector, forest planning is often coordinated among all those who share tenure. Most often, a primary forest tenure holder is responsible for organizing and developing the overall forest management plan that all overlapping forest tenure holders must follow. In these cases, forest certification of the Management Unit is often permissible, assuming The Organization has sufficient influence and control over the forest management plan and its implementation throughout the Management Unit.

However, non-forest tenure holders (e.g. mining, or oil and gas operations) are not bound by a forest management plan. This creates challenges because The Organization may not have the authority or leverage to constrain the activities of non-forest tenure holders. In essence, The Organization may lack sufficient control of the activities occurring on the Management Unit to be certifiable.

The approach for handling overlapping tenure holders adopted by this Standard follows these basic tenets established by international FSC policies and directives:

- FSC certification applies to the forest, not The Organization;
- The cumulative impacts of all activities on the forest are to be considered during certification;
- The Organization must demonstrate sufficient management control over activities occurring in the forest;

- Where forest use rights are shared with other tenure holders, The Organization must be able to demonstrate that sharing these rights does not preclude meeting the FSC Principles and Criteria in the forest.

While it is not mandated that all overlapping tenure holders participate in the FSC certification process and/or meet the same FSC requirements as The Organization, their activities must not negate the impact of The Organization's ability to demonstrate that the forest and activities within it meet the conditions of this Standard. Overlapping forest tenure holders who chose not to participate in the certification process may not make claims regarding the FSC-certified status of the wood harvested from the forest.

Regulatory context

The federal and provincial/territorial governments have specific roles in the management of public forest lands. The federal government is responsible for issues related to the national economy, trade, international relations, federal lands and national parks, and has constitutional, treaty and legal responsibilities related to Indigenous Peoples. The provincial and territorial governments have legislative authority over the conservation and management of the forest resources on Crown lands², and are responsible for developing and enforcing forest-related laws, regulations and policies. Annex A of this Standard refers to documents outlining the minimum laws and regulations related to forest activities that apply federally and those that apply at the provincial and territorial levels.

Some provinces have laws and norms for forest management practices on private lands. However, in most cases, private land forestry is governed by municipal regulations and supported by provincial guidelines or voluntary programs⁴. Landowners address illegal activities on private land through Canadian laws governing property rights⁴.

FSC requirements vs. legal and regulatory processes

The Organization is required to comply with all applicable forest laws and regulations. Efforts have been made to avoid known circumstances where the Standard's requirements are not consistent with legal and regulatory requirements. Where a conflict is identified between a requirement of this Standard and an applicable law or regulation, The Organization is not expected to violate the legal requirement, and must promptly notify FSC Canada of the conflict so that FSC may take steps to evaluate the related circumstances.

Alternatively, there may be circumstances where the Standard's requirements go beyond legal and regulatory requirements. Forest certification, as a voluntary system, expects The Organization to complement or even exceed legal and regulatory requirements to achieve the Standard's requirements and remain consistent with FSC's values and mission.

Indigenous context

In Canada, the term most commonly used to represent the diversity of Indigenous Peoples is "Aboriginal peoples", as per the Constitution Act, 1982. For FSC, Indigenous Peoples includes many diverse First Nations, Inuit and Métis peoples, each whom possess unique histories, languages, cultural practices and spiritual beliefs.

Most First Nations and Inuit peoples, as well as their representative institutions, are recognized by both federal and provincial levels of government. Databases related to their governance, reserve land-base and traditional territories are publicly available. The same cannot be said for Métis, as the legal framework to recognize Métis status is in development.

Existing aboriginal and treaty rights

Aboriginal rights are collective rights which flow from Aboriginal peoples (i.e. Indigenous Peoples) continued use and occupation of certain areas⁵. They are inherent rights that have been practiced and enjoyed since before European settlement, for example, the right to hunt, fish and trap, self-government and/or a right to the land itself, i.e. Aboriginal title to land⁵. Treaty rights are Aboriginal rights set out in a treaty.

Section 35 of Canada's Constitution Act, 1982, provides constitutional protection to existing Aboriginal and treaty rights (First Nation, Inuit and Métis) in Canada. Extensive case law has documented efforts to explicitly define what these rights are and how they are to be protected. Progress has been made on defining obligations of governments in relation to consultation and accommodation requirements, but it is difficult to definitively list specific existing Aboriginal and treaty rights to an area without first conducting case-by-case assessments.

Section 35 also establishes that the Crown has a duty to consult and accommodate Aboriginal peoples when the Crown contemplates actions or decisions that may affect Aboriginal or treaty rights. This duty arises most often in the context of natural resource extraction, including forestry. This fiduciary duty cannot be delegated to third parties, including forest companies. However, the Crown may delegate certain aspects of consultation to a proponent (e.g. collection of information regarding a proposal, impact of a proposed project on potential or established Aboriginal or treaty rights, etc.) when it is in the best interest of all parties to do so. However, it remains the legal responsibility of the Crown to retain oversight of this delegated authority.

Despite this tripartite relationship, there exists a space in which third parties engage and collaborate with Indigenous Peoples to ensure Aboriginal and treaty rights are recognized and upheld. This Standard provides room for this engagement mainly through Principle 3, but through other Indicators as well. FSC recognizes that unresolved issues, such as how Aboriginal title and private ownership will be reconciled where they overlap, poses important challenges⁶ and will require innovative and flexible approaches as the Canadian legal framework evolves.

Customary rights

In Canada, the term “customary right” is not commonly used in Indigenous rights discourse. It is much more common to come across references to customary law, traditional law, Natural Law or legal traditions that are codified in written (e.g. wampum belts or sacred scrolls) and unwritten forms (e.g. songs, dances) and passed on through the generations. More importantly, the values, beliefs, and understanding of law are conveyed through the continuing practices, customs and traditions of the society. These practices, as defined in the Glossary, make up the customary rights of Indigenous Peoples. For more information on customary rights, refer to the FSC Canada Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC) Guidance document.

Free, Prior and Informed Consent

A core concept of international agreements recognizing the rights of Indigenous Peoples is the right of Indigenous Peoples to Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC), and is embedded within FSC's Principles and Criteria (version 5). FPIC requirements are valid for Canada, and have been adapted in this Standard to recognize the modern-day context of Aboriginal rights discourse. To assist in the understanding of how FPIC is to be applied in a Canadian context, FSC Canada has developed a country-specific guideline for the implementation of FPIC. Refer to the FSC Canada Guidance on Free Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC).

Ecological Context

While Canada encompasses a wide range of forest types and ecological communities, this standard is designed to apply to each of Canada's eight forest regions where forest management activities take place.

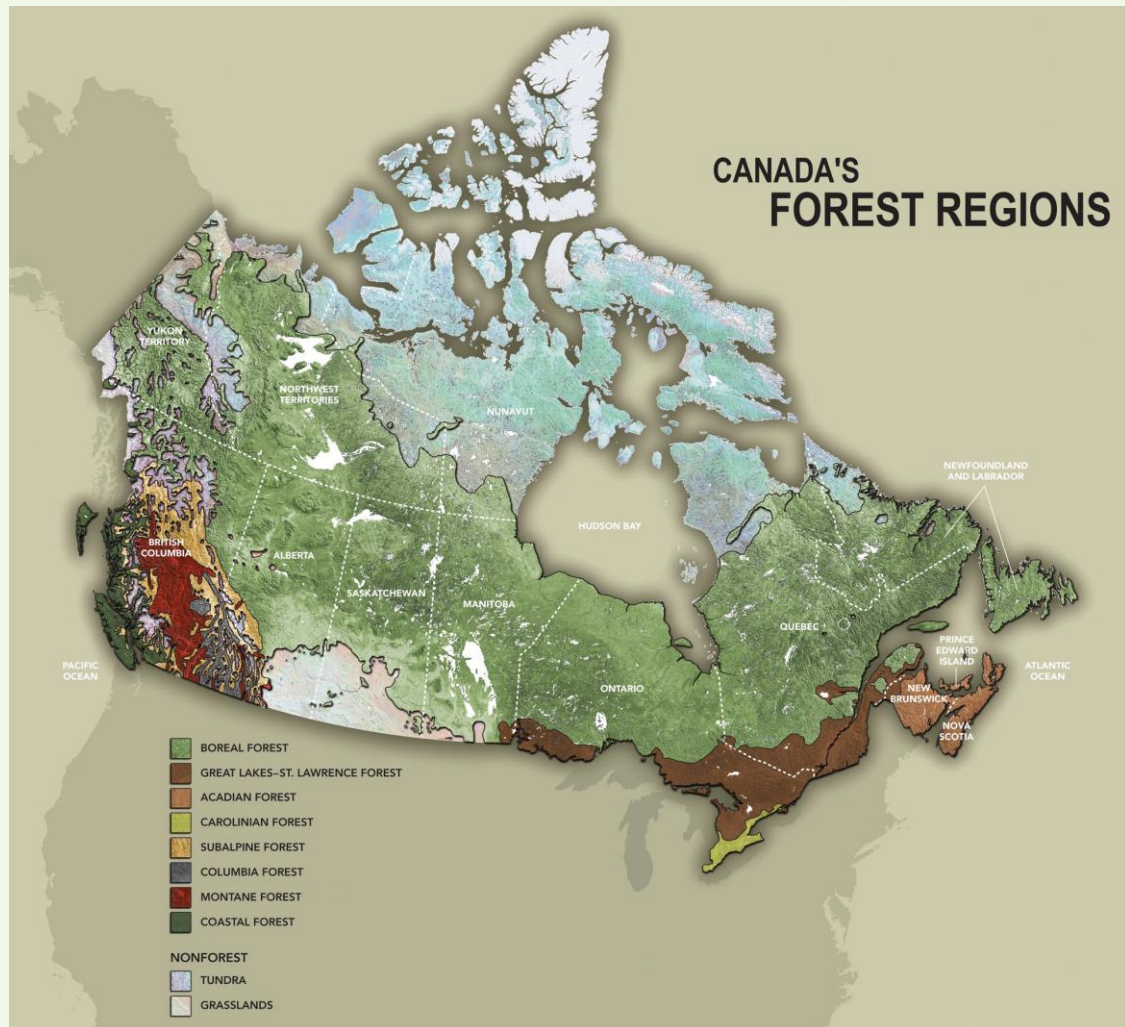


Figure 1 Forest regions of Canada (Source: Natural Resources Canada, Government of Canada. Accessed 2017. <http://www.nrcan.gc.ca/forests/measuring-reporting/classification/13179>)

Social context

Canada's forests are an important source of culture, recreation and economic opportunities for the people living in and around forests. Direct economic dependence on the forest is most heavily realized in northern and remote communities, where in many cases the forest industry is a significant employer. Harmonizing socio-economic needs with the other societal values of the forest requires balancing the interests of local and affected indigenous and non-indigenous communities with other stakeholders and interested parties. FSC attempts to take an inclusive approach to the input of stakeholders and interested parties in forest management and the Standard identifies specific opportunities for their involvement.

Disputes between parties

Invariably there are cases where people disagree on management objectives. This Standard includes various dispute resolution pathways, depending on the nature of the dispute. However, all dispute resolution pathways address the same general framework:

- identification of complaints;
- escalation to dispute;
- development and implementation of a dispute resolution process; and
- maintaining records of process and outcome.

Annex E describes the dispute resolution process and its application in greater detail.

Supporting documentation to the standard

While this Standard forms the backbone of the normative requirements of the FSC Forest Stewardship Standard for Canada, additional normative and non-normative documentation exists (both national and international), which is meant to provide direction and guidance regarding the implementation of the Standard. Refer to the Reference List (at the end of the Standard) for a list of the relevant FSC Standards, policies, directives and guidance that apply as of the effective date of this Standard. Additional normative and non-normative documents, as well as adaptations or modifications of this Standard may become available over time.

Going forward

FSC Canada aims to foster stability, clarity and support to certificate holders, certification bodies, Indigenous Peoples and stakeholders. FSC Canada is committed to carefully plan, communicate and deliver on outstanding work, and how changes or new material will be incorporated into the Standard.

FSC's normative requirements allow for targeted revisions that can be initiated within the five-year lifecycle of the Standard. Working closely with the Policy and Performance Unit and with Canadian stakeholders, FSC Canada will identify a modification window if modifications are anticipated.

The Organizations, certification bodies, practitioners, Indigenous Peoples and stakeholders may refer to the FSC Canada website or contact FSC Canada to confirm which documents and versions are current and applicable to the implementation of this Standard.

References

1. Natural Resources Canada (2017-11-20) Forest land ownership. <http://www.nrcan.gc.ca/forests/canada/ownership/17495> (accessed April 18, 2019).
2. Canadian Council of Forest Ministers (2017) Sustainable Forest Management in Canada. Overview - Canada's Forests. <https://www.sfmcanada.org/en/canada-s-forests> (accessed April 18, 2019).
3. Teitelbaum, S., Beckley, T., and Nadeau, S. (2006) A national portrait of community forestry on public land in Canada. *The Forestry Chronicle* 82(3): 416-428. Also available at <http://pubs.cif-ifc.org/doi/pdf/10.5558/tfc82416-3> (accessed April 18, 2019).
4. Natural Resources Canada (2017-07-26) Canada's forest laws. <http://www.nrcan.gc.ca/forests/canada/laws/17497> (accessed April 18, 2019).
5. University of British Columbia First Nations Studies Program. 2009. Indigenous Foundations: Aboriginal Rights. https://indigenousfoundations.arts.ubc.ca/aboriginal_rights/ (accessed April 18, 2019).
6. Borrows, J. (2015) Aboriginal title and private property. *The Supreme Court Law Review: Osgoode's Annual Constitutional Cases Conference* 71: 90-134.

C.2 Members of the Standards Development Group

Chamber	Name	Organization	Period
Social	Solange Nadeau	Individual Member	2013 – Ongoing
	Chuck Rumsey	Ecotrust Canada	2024 – Ongoing
Indigenous	Tess James	Individual Member	2024 – Ongoing
	Larry McDermott	Plenty Canada	2024 – Ongoing
Environment	Chris Wedeles	Individual Member	2023 – Ongoing
	Dave Pearce	Wildlands League	2013 – 2026
Economic	Chris McDonnell	GreenFirst Forest Products	2013 – Ongoing
	Tina Langille-Hayward	Alberta-Pacific Forest Products Inc.	2023 – 2025

C.3 Experts advising the Standard Development Group

Name	Organization
Ugo Lapointe	SmartCert
Christine Davis	The Firelight Group Inc.
Pamela Perreault	The Firelight Group Inc.

C.4 Background information on the standard development (V1-0)

In January 2013, FSC Canada membership voted in favour of developing one national standard for Canada, thus replacing Canada's four existing regional FSC Forest Management standards (i.e. National Boreal, Maritimes, British Columbia Standards and interim Great Lakes-St. Lawrence Standards) with a single standard that would apply to the whole country.

The FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Canada (hereafter referred to as the 'Standard') was developed by FSC Canada's Standard Development Group (SDG) and collaborators who worked to achieve consensus among a wide range of people, organizations and interests.

The early stages of development formed six Technical Expert Panels (TEPs) to assist with scientific and cultural expertise, and recommendations related to several critical concepts within this Standard. Topics

were identified through early public outreach efforts and surveys, and addressed the following: Scale, Intensity & Risk (SIR), Species-at-risk, pesticides and conversion, ecological and operational considerations, as well as community, stakeholder and Aboriginal rights.

The drafting of individual Indicators was guided by two FSC International documents:

- FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0 EN International Generic Indicators; and
- FSC-PRO-60-006 V1-0 EN Development and Transfer of NFSS to FSC P&C V5

These documents outlined how the SDG were to use the International Generic Indicators (IGI) as a baseline for drafting the new Standard. Also known as the ‘transfer process,’ the SDG had four options for interpreting each IGI.

1. **Adopt:** The SDG copies an International Generic Indicator into the new FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard.
2. **Adapt:** The SDG reviews and revises an International Generic Indicator in order to address terminology, scope or effectiveness in measuring conformance to a Criterion.
3. **Drop:** The SDG may omit an International Generic Indicator where it is determined to be inapplicable or otherwise non-contributing in measuring conformance to a Criterion.
4. **Add:** The SDG may suggest additional Indicators in order to better establish conformance to a Criterion as appropriate in a Canadian context.

Two draft versions of the Standard were submitted for public consultation and comment. In addition, a rigorous testing program evaluated the auditability and implementability of Draft 2 of the Standard, as well as several key topics and Indicators. Under the direction and the discretion of the SDG, members reached out to sample chamber perspectives on the final version of the Standard.

The final draft Standard was submitted to the FSC Canada Board of Directors, who endorsed the submission of the Standard to FSC’s Policy and Standards Committee for final approval.

C.5 Summary of the revision process (V1-1)

This partial revision (V1-1) is based on V1-0 of the standard and reflects the evolution of FSC requirements developed in response to the global decline of the abundance of Intact Forest Landscapes (IFL). In response to this trend, FSC membership widely supported Policy Motion 65 at the 2014 General Assembly. Through subsequent motions (Motion 34/2017, Motion 71/2017, and Motion 23/2022), requirements for the protection of Intact Forest Landscapes (IFL) and Indigenous Cultural Landscapes (ICL) were further developed and strengthened.

These requirements reflect a culmination of efforts from working groups, experts, field tests, stakeholder consultations, and Standard Development Group (SDG) processes (refer to Section G, subsection ‘Stakeholder Engagement: Intact Forest Landscapes (IFL) and Indigenous Cultural Landscapes [ICL]’ [p. 173]).

The resulting framework was further informed by a pilot process of FSC-PRO-60-004 EN V1-0 Draft 1-0, which aimed to develop and test approaches for landscape-level forest management.

In parallel, revisions also incorporate requirements to implement FSC-POL-01-007 V1-0, the Policy to Address Conversion, introduced through Motion 37/2021. These requirements were initially implemented through ADVICE-20-007-22 and ADVICE-20-007-23 (Version 2-0), and are now formally integrated into this standard.

This partial revision includes targeted updates and additions to the standard. These comprise revisions to Indicators 3.1.2, 3.2.1, and 3.2.5; updates to Criteria 6.9 and 6.10; and the introduction of a new Criterion

6.11 with associated indicators. In addition, new indicators have been incorporated under Principle 9 (9.1.4, 9.1.10, 9.2.4, 9.2.5, 9.2.6, 9.3.3, and 9.3.5), resulting in the renumbering of indicators within this Principle. Further updates include the incorporation of relevant references, terms, and definitions aligned with these changes, as well as the correction of typographical errors and outdated references.

This revised version represents an incremental update to the standard and remains in effect until it is replaced by a subsequent revision.

Version	Description	Summary of Changes
V1-1	In response to the declining abundance of Intact Forest Landscapes globally, FSC membership widely supported Policy Motion 65 at the 2014 General Assembly. Through subsequent motions—Motion 34/2017, Motion 71/2017, and Motion 23/2022—requirements for the protection of Intact Forest Landscapes (IFL) and Indigenous Cultural Landscapes (ICL) were developed. The requirements reflect a culmination of efforts from working groups, experts, field tests, consultations, and SDG developments (Refer to the sub-section ‘Stakeholder Engagement: Intact Forest Landscapes (IFL) and Indigenous Cultural Landscapes (ICL)’ (p. 154) in Annex I). The final version resulted from a pilot process of <FSC-PRO-60-004 V1-0 EN Draft 1-0> with the purpose of developing a landscape-level. Revisions also incorporate requirements to implement <FSC-POL-01-007 V1-0>, the Policy to Address Conversion, introduced by Motion 37/2021. These requirements were already in effect through ADVICE-20-007-22 and ADVICE-20-007-23 V2-0.	Partial revision, including the following changes: ○ Changes to Indicators 3.1.2, 3.2.1, and 3.2.5. ○ Changes to Criteria 6.9, 6.10, and addition of new Criterion 6.11 and related indicators. ○ Addition of the following Indicators: 9.1.4, 9.1.10, 9.2.4, 9.2.5, 9.2.6, 9.3.3, 9.3.5 NOTE: Numbering of Indicators in Principle 9 have changed. ○ Incorporation of references, terms and definitions in relation to the changes listed above. ○ Updates of outdated references and correction of typographical errors.

D RELEVANT FSC DOCUMENTS

(Informative section)

The following referenced documents are relevant for the application of this standard. For references without a version number, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

FSC-STD-60-006	<i>Process requirements for the development and maintenance of National Forest Stewardship Standards</i>
FSC-STD-60-002	<i>Structure and Content of National Forest Stewardship Standards</i>
FSC-STD-30-005	<i>FSC Standard for Group Entities in Forest Management Groups</i>
FSC-STD-01-003	<i>SLIMF Eligibility Criteria</i>
FSC-STD-01-002	<i>FSC Glossary of Terms</i>
FSC-STD-01-001	<i>FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship V5-2 EN</i>
FSC-PRO-60-006	<i>Development and Transfer of NFSS to FSC P&C V5-1</i>
FSC-PRO-30-006	<i>Ecosystem Services Procedure: Impact Demonstration and Market Tools</i>
FSC-PRO-01-009	<i>Processing Policy for Association Complaints in the FSC Certification Scheme</i>
FSC-PRO-01-008	<i>Processing Complaints in the FSC Certification Scheme</i>
FSC-PRO-01-005	<i>Processing Appeals</i>
FSC-PRO-01-001	<i>The Development and Revision of FSC Normative Documents</i>
FSC-POL-30-602	<i>FSC Interpretation on GMOs (Genetically Modified Organisms)</i>
FSC-POL-30-401	<i>FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions</i>
FSC-POL-30-001	<i>FSC Pesticides Policy</i>
FSC-POL-20-003	<i>The Excision of Areas from the Scope of Certification</i>
FSC-POL-01-004	<i>Policy for the Association of Organizations with FSC</i>
FSC-GUI-60-005	<i>Promoting Gender Equality in National Forest Stewardship Standards</i>
FSC-GUI-60-002	<i>SIR Guideline for Standard Developers</i>
FSC-DIR-20-007	<i>FSC Directive on FSC Forest Management Evaluations</i>
	<i>FSC Technical Series No. 2009-001 FSC Guide to integrated pest, disease and weed management in FSC certified forests and plantations</i>
	<i>FSC-STD-CAN-Maritimes-2008 Certification Standards for Best Forestry Practices in the Maritimes Region</i>

FSC Canada. 2004 National Boreal Standard

Forest Stewardship Council Regional Certification Standards for British Columbia, 2005

FSC Forest Stewardship Standard Great Lakes St. Lawrence Region, Draft 3, 2010

Note: When applying this standard, consider relevant interpretations by inquiring with local FSC representatives (e.g., FSC Canada, or your Certification Body). International interpretations are available through the FSC Document Centre (<https://fsc.org/en/document-centre>).

E PRINCIPLES*, CRITERIA* AND INDICATORS*

(Normative section)

PRINCIPLE* 1: COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS

The Organization* shall comply with all *applicable laws**, regulations and *nationally ratified** international treaties, conventions and agreements. (P1 V4)

- 1.1** *The Organization** shall be a legally defined entity with clear, documented and unchallenged *legal** registration, with written authorization from the *legally competent** authority for specific activities.

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A (under section 1. Legal rights to harvest) for a list of federal and provincial laws and regulations related to this Criterion.

- 1.1.1 Legal registration to carry out all activities within the scope of the certificate granted by a legally competent authority is documented.

- 1.2** *The Organization** shall demonstrate that the *legal** status of the *Management Unit**, including *tenure** and *use rights**, and its boundaries, are clearly defined. (C2.1 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A (under section 1. Legal rights to harvest) for a list of federal and provincial laws and regulations related to this Criterion.

- 1.2.1 Legal tenure to manage and use resources within the scope of the certificate granted by a legally competent authority is documented.

- 1.2.2 The boundaries of all Management Units within the scope of the certificate are clearly marked or documented and shown on maps.

- 1.3** *The Organization** shall have *legal** rights to operate in the *Management Unit**, which fit the *legal** status of *The Organization** and of the *Management Unit**, and shall comply with the associated *legal** obligations in applicable national and *local laws** and regulations and administrative requirements. The *legal** rights shall provide for harvest of products and/or supply of *ecosystem services** from within the *Management Unit**. *The Organization** shall pay the legally prescribed charges associated with such rights and obligations. (C1.1, 1.2, 1.3 V4)

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A for a minimum list of applicable laws, regulations and nationally ratified international treaties, conventions and agreements.

CITES requirements are covered by the Wild Animal and Plant Protection and Regulation of International and Interprovincial Trade Act (WAPPROITA) and other existing national legislation.

1.3.1 *Forest management activities** in the Management Unit, planned and ongoing, are carried out in compliance with:

- 1) Applicable laws and regulations;
- 2) Administrative requirements;
- 3) Legal rights; and
- 4) Customary rights of Indigenous Peoples.

INTENT BOX

In Canada, the term “customary right” is not commonly used in Indigenous rights discourse. It is much more common to use customary law, traditional law, Natural Law or legal traditions that are codified in written (e.g. wampum belts or sacred scrolls) and unwritten forms (e.g. songs, dances) and passed on through the generations. More importantly, though, the values, beliefs, and understanding of law are conveyed through the continuing practices, customs and traditions of the society. These practices make up the customary rights of Indigenous Peoples.

Annex A refers to a minimum list of current laws and regulations which represent legal rights. The identification of customary rights that are not recognized under Canadian laws and their consideration is achieved through Principle 3.

1.3.2 Payment is made in a timely manner of all applicable legally prescribed charges connected with forest management.

1.4 *The Organization shall develop and implement measures, and/or shall engage with regulatory agencies, to systematically protect the *Management Unit** from unauthorized or illegal resource use, settlement and other illegal activities. (C1.5 V4)**

INTENT BOX

It is not always possible for The Organization to enforce protective measures when The Organization is not the landowner and/or does not have the legal rights of control. In Canada, regulatory bodies have the legal responsibility for controlling illegal activities.

Measures to protect the Management Unit from unauthorized or illegal resource use, settlement and other illegal activities emphasize prevention, rather than act ‘after the fact’.

1.4.1 Within the scope of The Organization’s authority, measures are implemented to identify, prevent and control unauthorized or illegal harvesting, hunting, fishing, trapping, collecting, settlement and other unauthorized activities.

1.4.2 Where protection is the legal responsibility of regulatory bodies, a system is implemented to work with these regulatory bodies to identify, report, discourage, control and address unauthorized or illegal activities.

1.5 The Organization* shall comply with the applicable *national laws, local law, *ratified** international conventions and *obligatory codes of practice**, relating to the transportation and trade of *forest** products within and from the *Management Unit**, and/or up to the point of first sale. (C1.1, 1.3 V4)**

- 1.5.1 Compliance with relevant national laws, local laws and ratified international conventions relating to the transportation and trade of forest products, including CITES species, up to the point of first sale is demonstrated, including through possession of certificates for harvest and trade.

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A for a minimum list of applicable laws, regulations and nationally ratified international treaties, conventions and agreements.

CITES requirements are covered by the Wild Animal and Plant Protection and Regulation of International and Interprovincial Trade Act (WAPPRITA) and other existing national legislation.

1.6 The Organization* shall identify, prevent and resolve *disputes over issues of statutory or customary law*, which can be settled out of court in a *timely manner**, through *engagement** with *affected stakeholders**. (C2.3 V4)**

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex E for details describing how disputes are addressed throughout the Standard.

- 1.6.1 A system is in place whereby *complaints** can be made known to The Organization related to applicable laws or customary law.
- 1.6.2 A publicly available *dispute** resolution process that can be adapted through culturally appropriate *engagement** is in place, including mechanisms to address *disputes of substantial magnitude** that include provisions for ceasing operations.
- 1.6.3 *Complaints** are responded to in a timely manner. *Complaints** that are not resolved are elevated to *disputes** and are being addressed via a *dispute** resolution process.

INTENT BOX

FSC recognizes that The Organization may not have control over statutory or legal matters, or may not be directly involved in a dispute regarding the Management Unit. In these cases, it would be reasonable for The Organization to work within its sphere of influence to encourage parties, where appropriate, to work together to resolve the dispute.

- 1.6.4 An up-to-date record of *complaints** and *disputes** is maintained and includes:
- 1) Steps taken to resolve *complaints** and *disputes**;
 - 2) Outcomes of all *complaints** and *dispute** resolution processes; and
 - 3) Unresolved *disputes**, the reasons they are not resolved, and how they will be resolved.
- 1.6.5 The *dispute** resolution process as established in Indicator 1.6.2 is implemented, following the provisions for ceasing of operations for *disputes of substantial magnitude**.

1.7 *The Organization shall publicize a commitment not to offer or receive bribes in money or any other form of corruption, and shall comply with anticorruption legislation where this exists. In the absence of anticorruption legislation, *The Organization** shall implement other anticorruption measures proportionate to the *scale** and *intensity** of *management activities** and the *risk** of corruption.**

1.7.1 A policy is implemented that:

- 1) Includes a commitment not to offer or receive bribes of any description;
- 2) Meets or exceeds related legislation; and
- 3) Is publicly available at no cost.

1.7.2 Bribery, coercion and other acts of corruption do not occur.

1.7.3 Corrective measures are implemented if corruption does occur.

1.8 *The Organization shall demonstrate a *long-term** commitment to adhere to the FSC *Principles** and *Criteria in the Management Unit**, and to related FSC Policies and Standards. A statement of this commitment shall be contained in a *publicly available** document made freely available. (C1.6 V4)**

1.8.1 A publicly available written policy, endorsed by an individual with authority to implement the policy, demonstrates a *long-term** commitment to forest management practices consistent with FSC Principles and Criteria and related Policies and Standards.

INTENT BOX

The individual with authority is not necessarily the president of a company or the most senior manager or the highest-lever manager. For example, depending on the circumstances:

- an individual may have been delegated authority for the implementation of FSC certification;
 - if the policy is integrated in the management plan, the individual may be the person in charge of and fully responsible for the forest management plan.
-

PRINCIPLE* 2: WORKERS* RIGHTS AND EMPLOYMENT CONDITIONS

The Organization* shall maintain or enhance the social and economic wellbeing of **workers***.

- 2.1** **The Organization*** shall **uphold*** the **principles*** and rights at work as defined in the ILO Declaration on Fundamental **Principles*** and Rights at Work (1998) based on the eight ILO Core Labour Conventions. (C4.3 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

There are no known gaps between the ILO Core Conventions and the Canadian national/ provincial regulations so there is low risk for violation. See Annex A for more details.

- 2.1.1 Employment practices and conditions for **workers*** demonstrate conformity with federal and provincial labour laws and with the principles and rights of **workers*** addressed in the ILO Core Labour Conventions.
- 2.1.2 **Workers*** are able to establish or join labour organizations of their own choosing, subject only to the rules of the labour organization concerned.
- 2.1.3 Collective bargaining agreements are implemented where they exist.

- 2.2** **The Organization*** shall **promote gender equality*** in employment practices, training opportunities, awarding of contracts, processes of **engagement*** and **management activities***.

- 2.2.1 Systems are implemented that promote gender equality and prevent gender discrimination in employment practices, training opportunities, awarding of contracts, processes of **engagement*** and **management activities***.
- 2.2.2 Job opportunities are open to both women and men under the same conditions.
- 2.2.3 With consideration for worker experience, performance, and working conditions, women and men are paid equally using a direct and secure method of payment.
- 2.2.4 Maternity and paternity leave is available for no less than a six-week period after childbirth, and there is no penalty for taking it.
- 2.2.5 Women and men are encouraged and supported to actively participate in all levels of employment and decision-making.

INTENT BOX

Decision-making activities can vary within a business and at different levels of decision-making. They may include participation in forest management planning meetings, technical or strategic committees, decision-making forums, steering committees, membership on the board of directors, etc.

Support for the active participation in meetings may include scheduling the timing of meetings to accommodate family obligations, for example.

- 2.2.6 Confidential and effective mechanisms exist for reporting and eliminating cases of sexual harassment and discrimination based on gender, marital status, parenthood or sexual orientation.

- 2.3 ***The Organization** shall implement health and safety practices to protect *workers** from occupational safety and health hazards. These practices shall, proportionate to *scale**, *intensity** and *risk* of management activities**, meet or exceed the recommendations of the ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work. (C4.2 P&C V4)**

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A for a list of the main health and safety laws and regulations.

- 2.3.1 Compliance with relevant occupational health and safety regulations as specified in Annex A is demonstrated.

INTENT BOX

In this Standard, the requirements of the ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work are covered by Canadian legislation. Refer to Annex A, section 3.4 of the tables.

Legislation in Canada is equal to (or sometimes exceeds) this ILO Code of Practice.

- 2.3.2 A worker health & safety program for all *workers** that meets the requirements of Annex C is developed, implemented and reviewed periodically.
- 2.3.3. Records are kept on health and safety practices including accident rates, a description of accidents and their causes, and lost time due to accidents.
- 2.3.4. The average frequency and severity of accidents over time are comparable to, or lower than, national or provincial forest *workers** averages, where those exist. If statistics on forest *workers** averages do not exist, the average frequency and severity of accidents over time remain low or are declining.

- 2.4 ***The Organization** shall pay wages that meet or exceed minimum *forest** industry standards or other recognized *forest** industry wage agreements or *living wages**, where these are higher than the *legal** minimum wages. When none of these exist, *The Organization** shall through *engagement** with *workers** develop mechanisms for determining *living wages**.**

- 2.4.1 Remuneration, including wages and benefits (such as health and retirement provisions), for *workers** is comparable to or exceeds prevailing regional standards in the industry.
- 2.4.2 Wages, salaries and contracts are paid on time.

- 2.5 ***The Organization** shall demonstrate that *workers** have job-specific training and supervision to safely and effectively implement the *management plan** and all *management activities**. (C7.3 P&C V4)**

- 2.5.1 *Workers** have job-specific training consistent with Annex B to safely and effectively contribute to the implementation of the management plan and all *management activities**.
- 2.5.2 Up-to-date training records are kept for *workers**.

2.6 The Organization*, through engagement* with workers*, shall have mechanisms for resolving grievances and for providing fair compensation* to workers* for loss or damage to property, occupational diseases*, or occupational injuries* sustained while working for The Organization*.

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex E for details describing how disputes are addressed throughout the Standard.

While this Criterion applies to worker complaints and disputes while working on the Management Unit, it is recognized that The Organization has limited capacity in managing and implementing dispute resolution processes where The Organization is not directly involved in the dispute (e.g. dispute between a contractor and subcontractor operating on the Management Unit).

In some cases, complaints or disputes may exist between a worker and their employer where the employer is not The Organization. In these cases, the requirements of the Criterion are still applicable, only the approach for demonstrating conformance may be different. For example, in these cases, it is possible for The Organization to verify that the employer's systems for receiving (2.6.1), managing (2.6.2, 2.6.3) and resolving (2.6.4) complaints and disputes with their workers are in place and being implemented by the employer.

- 2.6.1 A system is in place whereby *complaints** from *workers** can be made known to their employer.
- 2.6.2 A publicly available *dispute** resolution process that can be adapted through culturally appropriate *engagement** is in place.
- 2.6.3 *Complaints** are responded to in a timely manner. *Complaints** that are not resolved are elevated to *disputes** and are being addressed via a *dispute** resolution process.
- 2.6.4 An up-to-date record of *complaints** and *disputes** is maintained and includes:
- 1) Steps taken to resolve *complaints** and *disputes**;
 - 2) Outcomes of all *complaints** and *disputes** resolution processes, including, where applicable, *fair compensation** to *workers** for loss or damage to property, occupational diseases, or occupational injuries sustained while working for The Organization; and
 - 3) Unresolved *disputes**, the reasons they are not resolved, and how they will be resolved.
- 2.6.5 *Workers** are covered by safety insurance, in accordance with provincial laws and regulations.

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A (under section 3.4 Health and Safety) for a list of provincial safety insurance laws and regulations.

PRINCIPLE* 3: INDIGENOUS PEOPLES* RIGHTS

The Organization* shall identify and uphold* Indigenous Peoples* legal* and customary rights* of ownership, use and management of land, territories* and resources affected by management activities*. (P3 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

Indigenous Peoples' rights (i.e. Aboriginal and treaty rights) as per Section 35 (1) of the Constitution Act, 1982) are considered collective rights in that the rights belong to a group and not to an individual. As per the Constitution Act, 1982, "Aboriginal peoples" include First Nations, Métis and Inuit peoples.

In addition to these collective rights, the UN Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (UNDRIP) and ILO 169 include the protection of basic human rights (i.e. individual rights) of Indigenous Peoples. Individual rights, held by affected stakeholders in this Standard who are also members of an Indigenous community, are addressed in Principle 1 (Criterion 1.6) and Principle 7 (Criterion 7.6), and are not subject to the requirements of Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC) and other national and international human rights instruments (e.g. Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms).

The right to FPIC is a collective right held by Indigenous Peoples and recognized in international law. While FSC Canada has provided guidance on developing processes to uphold this right, it is preferable that The Organization remains open to discussing the definition, scope and nature of such a process with the rights holders.

The principle of good faith and the acceptance of a shared responsibility for meaningful consultation and accommodation is fundamental to the implementation of a FPIC process. To ensure there is broad support for the implementation of a FPIC process, initial and on-going engagement with Indigenous Peoples may also include governments and other stakeholders with whom the affected Indigenous Peoples have a fiduciary relationship.

The intent of Principle 3 is to ensure that all management activities, including the building of relationships between The Organization and Indigenous Peoples, are conducted for the benefit of the entire community. Economic and social benefits gained by a private enterprise from forest management opportunities offered by The Organization are addressed in Principle 5. In circumstances where Indigenous Peoples express concern or an interest in management activities not directly related to legal or customary rights of Indigenous Peoples, The Organization may address them through the requirements of Principle 4 – Community Relations.

Indigenous Cultural Landscapes: This term is defined in the Glossary. From an Indigenous perspective, the forest and the land are a network of relationships among soils, waterways, plants, animals, and people. Indigenous Peoples' relationships with the land are continuously evolving and can occur at many scales. Indigenous Cultural Landscapes should not be confused with individual, discrete features on the land (e.g., site-level attributes, archaeological locations, etc.). The intent of its reference in the Standard is to support landscape-level dialogue regarding the interdependencies between ecosystem function and integrity and Indigenous Peoples' ability to practice their rights.

Indigenous Cultural Landscapes are referred to in Indicators 3.1.2 and 3.2.1, and in Principle 9. The awareness gained by The Organization through efforts to understand Indigenous Cultural Landscapes is relevant throughout Principle 3 by fostering informed and respectful dialogue.

Customary rights: This term is defined in the Glossary. Canadian law has recognized certain customary practices and laws that may be unique to specific Indigenous Peoples or a shared custom across many groups. In the context of FSC certification, these practices constitute customary rights. Governments have recognized traditional forms of land governance through legally binding agreements such as government-to-government consultation agreements and agreements related to modern day treaty negotiation. Such agreements may provide examples of customary rights pertinent to the forestry context (refer to the Preamble for additional context).

The right to Free, Prior and Informed Consent: The right to FPIC is a key principle of international human rights law. It is intended to protect the legal and customary rights of Indigenous Peoples and prevent further destruction and alienation from lands, territories and resources upon which their cultures, livelihoods and lives depend. In the context of the FSC Standard, the right to FPIC is attributed to identified affected rights holders as per Indicator 3.1.4. The rights that may be addressed through a FPIC process in 3.2.4 are those rights that may be impacted by management activities as identified in Indicator 3.1.4.

Disputes: This term is defined in the Glossary. Complaints and disputes regarding the legality of the forestry operation (e.g. forest tenure allocation or management regulations) are addressed in Criterion 1.6. Dispute resolution processes that are specific to negotiated agreements between The Organization and affected

Indigenous Peoples, but may not be publicly available, are addressed in Indicators 3.2.4 and 3.3.3. If complaints or disputes registered by affected Indigenous Peoples, related to the impact of the forest management activities, are not addressed in Criterion 1.6 and in Principle 3, they could be addressed in Criterion 4.6.

Culturally appropriate engagement: These terms are defined in the Glossary and further explained in Annex F. The Organization may wish to further clarify what this means in their own context (e.g. private land, small landholders, community forests). For example, engagement is not limited to stakeholders or Indigenous Peoples, but may also include government officials with responsibilities related to management activities. The purpose of the engagement is to ensure all relevant information is collected to fulfil the requirements of management planning and the Standard.

Private Lands: Canadian courts and legislation recognize that legal and customary rights (specifically use rights) and private property rights (i.e. right of ownership) may co-exist. This Standard does not abrogate or derogate from the right to property. The legal rights and customary rights addressed in Principle 3 are based on the pre-settlement conditions of the region (i.e. prior to the granting of land) and must be identified on a case-by-case basis, preferably through culturally appropriate engagement and relationship building. The mechanisms (i.e. type of agreements) used to uphold these rights on private lands may differ from public lands. There is an evolving legal framework related to Aboriginal and treaty rights and private lands in Canada. FSC Canada will monitor and adapt the FPIC Guidance or provide normative direction when/if necessary.

FPIC Guidance: For more information on the nature and scope of Indigenous Peoples rights, including the right to Free, Prior and Informed Consent, refer to FSC Canada Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC) Guidance.

3.1 *The Organization shall identify the *Indigenous Peoples** that exist within the *Management Unit** or those that are affected by *management activities**. *The Organization** shall then, through *engagement** with these *Indigenous Peoples**, identify their rights of *tenure**, their rights of access to and use of *forest** resources and *ecosystem services**, their *customary rights** and *legal** rights and obligations, that apply within the *Management Unit**. *The Organization** shall also identify areas where these rights are contested.**

3.1.1 Indigenous Peoples that may be affected by *management activities** are identified.

3.1.2 Through culturally appropriate *engagement** with the Indigenous Peoples identified in 3.1.1, the following is documented and/or mapped using *best available information**:

- 1) Their legal and/or customary rights of tenure;
- 2) Their legal and/or customary access to, and use rights, of the forest resources and ecosystem services;
- 3) Their other legal and/or customary rights and responsibilities that may be affected by *management activities**;
- 4) Their Indigenous Cultural Landscape(s);
- 5) The evidence supporting these rights and responsibilities; and
- 6) Areas where rights are contested between Indigenous Peoples, governments and/or others.

INTENT BOX

Indigenous Cultural Landscapes are living landscapes to which Indigenous Peoples attribute environmental, social, cultural and economic value because of their enduring relationship with the land, water, fauna, flora and spirits and their present and future importance to their cultural identity. An Indigenous Cultural Landscape is characterized by features that have been maintained through long-term interactions based on land-care knowledge, and adaptive livelihood practices. They are landscapes over which Indigenous Peoples exercise responsibility for stewardship.

The term 'cultural landscape' is one way to describe the ways people have lived in a place, been affected by the landscape, and in turn altered the landscape as a reflection of their cultural traditions, social practices, economic activities, and spiritual meanings. In this way, cultural landscapes are 'living landscapes' rooted in both tangible and intangible aspects of culture that connect communities to their past traditions while simultaneously grounding Indigenous identity in the present with a multi-generational view of the future (The Firelight Group, 2025; Harrison and Rose, 2010; Andrews and Buggey, 2008).

It is important to note that Indigenous Peoples use various terminology to describe the concept of Indigenous Cultural Landscapes. Where available, existing research such as Traditional Use Studies, Traditional Knowledge and Use Studies, Land Use or Stewardship Plans can support an understanding of Indigenous Cultural Landscapes.

The inclusion of Indigenous Cultural Landscapes as a concept within Principle 3 is to support The Organization in understanding Indigenous Peoples' enduring relationship with the land and its importance to their evolving cultural identity; Indigenous Peoples' rights and stewardship responsibilities to the land; and to translate landscape-level knowledge and values into forest management planning. Conformance to the Indigenous Cultural Landscape component of this Indicator can be understood as The Organization's best efforts to recognize the perspective of Indigenous Peoples through culturally appropriate engagement and/or through best available information.

Refer to Annex F for more guidance related to culturally appropriate engagement.

- 3.1.3 When there is disagreement about the legal and/or customary rights affected by *management activities**, The Organization attempts, through culturally appropriate *engagement**, to reach agreement on an interim scope of rights to be recognized and upheld. This process is conducted in good faith, documented and available at the time of audit.

INTENT BOX

The intent of Indicator 3.1.3 is to support the development and maintenance of meaningful relationships that support long-term and culturally appropriate engagement that is fostered through dialogue. In the beginning, it may be helpful for The Organization to make persistent and sincere attempts to meet with Indigenous Peoples identified in Indicator 3.1.1 and discuss the nature and scope of the legal and customary rights that may be impacted by management activities.

For private land: In situations where legal and/or customary rights are asserted by Indigenous Peoples (identified in Indicator 3.1.1) without evidence, and private landowners determine through impact assessment that the negative impacts of the assertion are too high, the right to private property may be weighed against the rights of Indigenous Peoples.

- 3.1.4 Legal and/or customary rights that may be impacted by *management activities** on specific areas of the Management Unit are identified, and a summary of the means by which these rights, and contested rights, may be addressed is provided by The Organization.

3.2 The Organization* shall recognize and uphold* the legal* and customary rights* of Indigenous Peoples* to maintain control over management activities* within or related to the Management Unit* to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources and lands and territories*. Delegation by Indigenous Peoples* of control over management activities* to third parties requires Free, Prior and Informed Consent*. (C3.1 and 3.2 P&C V4)

- 3.2.1 Prior to *management activities** and through a *mutually agreed** upon culturally appropriate *engagement** process, it is determined when, where and how Indigenous Peoples can participate in management planning, both strategic and/or operational, to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources, lands and territories, including *Indigenous Cultural Landscapes**.
- 3.2.2 Culturally appropriate support for Indigenous Peoples participation in management planning is provided.
- 3.2.3 The legal and/or customary rights of Indigenous Peoples affected by *management activities** identified in Indicator 3.1.4 are recognized and upheld.
- 3.2.4 Where evidence exists that legal and/or customary rights of Indigenous Peoples related to *management activities** have been violated, the situation is corrected, if necessary, through culturally appropriate *engagement** and/or through the *dispute** resolution process as required in Criterion 1.6.
- 3.2.5 Free, Prior and Informed Consent is obtained prior to *management activities** that affect the rights identified in Indicator 3.1.4 through a process that:
 - 1) Engages the Indigenous Peoples in the assessment of the economic, social, cultural, and environmental values of the forest management resource;
 - 2) Documents an approach to identifying the goals and aspirations of affected rights holders related to *management activities**;
 - 3) Includes a *mutually agreed** upon *dispute** resolution process;
 - 4) Supports dialogue regarding the rights and responsibilities of Indigenous Peoples to the resource;
 - 5) Informs affected Indigenous Peoples of their right to withhold consent or modify consent to the proposed *management activities** to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources, lands and territories; and
 - 6) Supports decision-making by affected Indigenous Peoples that is free of coercion, manipulation or intimidation.

When Free, Prior and Informed Consent has not been obtained, The Organization demonstrates *best efforts** to support a culturally appropriate *engagement** process with affected Indigenous Peoples that is advancing in good faith with the intent of reaching an agreement based on Free, Prior and Informed Consent.

INTENT BOX

The goal and objective of a culturally appropriate engagement process between The Organization and affected Indigenous Peoples is to obtain Free, Prior and Informed Consent for management activities proposed within the Management Unit that may adversely impact their legal and customary rights, as identified in Indicator 3.1.4, to resources, lands and territories. The strategies and actions required by all parties to these processes will vary. The trust and confidence required to build and maintain a relationship that supports such a decision may require significant effort over a long period of time on the part of The Organization and affected Indigenous Peoples.

The right to Free, Prior and Informed Consent: Refer to the Intent Box for Principle 3 above.

It is possible that while a process is in place to obtain Free, Prior and Informed Consent, a formal agreement may not be reached at the time of audit. It is also possible that, for reasons outside the sphere of influence of The Organization, there may be a lack of response or cooperation from affected Indigenous Peoples, and therefore no documented support for either the process or management activities.

However, the intent to obtain Free, Prior and Informed Consent can be demonstrated through other means. Some examples include through policy and procedures, work plans, and records of communication (or attempted communication) with Indigenous Peoples when an agreed-upon FPIC process is not in place. Communication and support from government agencies with fiduciary and legal obligations to Indigenous Peoples may also be helpful to demonstrating best efforts, particularly when efforts by The Organization to engage Indigenous Peoples have been unsuccessful.

Scale of rights: While Indicator 3.1.4 and Criterion 3.5 call for the identification and protection of Indigenous Peoples rights at an operational and site-specific level, the application of rights, including cumulative impacts, may also apply across the Management Unit. In this case, rights would be addressed at the strategic planning level, as described in 3.2.1.

Good faith: Good faith is defined in the Glossary. It is a term used in ILO Conventions and recognized as an auditable element. The principle of good faith implies that the parties make every effort to reach an agreement, conduct genuine and constructive negotiations, avoid delays in negotiations, respect concluded agreements, and give sufficient time to discuss and settle disputes. Additional information is provided in the FSC Canada Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC) Guidance document.

Recognizing that Indigenous Peoples may not want to grant Free Prior and Informed Consent and/or delegate control for their own reasons, Indigenous Peoples may choose to offer their support for management activities in a different way of their choosing (refer to Indicators 3.3.1 and 3.3.2).

Private Land: There is an expectation that the approach to obtaining Free, Prior and Informed Consent on private lands will be different. This may include:

- a lengthier process of engagement to reach agreement, especially if rights holders have been excluded from the forest land for a long time;
- engagement with individual rights holders (i.e. customary rights) who claim and express an interest in accessing private property to carrying out their legal and customary rights and responsibilities (e.g. collection of birch bark, medicinal plants, hunting or social gathering); and
- the development of a shared understanding of best practices to mutually recognize and respect each party's rights to property (e.g. securing permission to enter private property through agreement).

- 3.3 In the event of delegation of control over *management activities**, a *binding agreement** between *The Organization** and the *Indigenous Peoples** shall be concluded through *Free, Prior and Informed Consent**. The agreement shall define its duration, provisions for renegotiation, renewal, termination, economic conditions and other terms and conditions. The agreement shall make provision for monitoring by *Indigenous Peoples** of *The Organization**'s compliance with its terms and conditions.**

INTENT BOX

This Criterion builds upon the FPIC process as described in Indicator 3.2.5 through the development, implementation and monitoring of binding agreements. These agreements do not require a delegation of control over management activities. The purpose of agreements is for The Organization to address the impact of management activities on the customs, values, sensitivities and ways of life of Indigenous Peoples.

- 3.3.1 A binding agreement contains the terms and conditions on which Free Prior and Informed Consent is reached, based on culturally appropriate *engagement**.
- 3.3.2 Records of binding agreements are maintained.
- 3.3.3 The binding agreement defines the duration, provisions for renegotiation, renewal, termination, economic conditions, provisions for monitoring and *dispute** resolution.

- 3.4 *The Organization** shall recognize and *uphold** the rights, customs and culture of *Indigenous Peoples** as defined in the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of *Indigenous Peoples** (2007) and ILO Convention 169 (1989). (C3.2 P&C V4, revised to comply with FSC-POL-30-401, ILO 169 and UNDRIP)**

INTENT BOX

The requirement of culturally appropriate engagement throughout the Standard is intended to facilitate a relationship building process based on dialogue, knowledge sharing and mutual respect. Through continuous engagement, The Organization and Indigenous Peoples may discuss and eventually mutually agree on the role of FSC certification in meeting Canada's commitment to UNDRIP as well as the unratified ILO Convention No.169.

Indigenous Peoples may raise concerns related to UNDRIP and ILO 169. The ongoing engagement process set out in this Standard (Principle 1 and 3) provides an opportunity for The Organization to determine what is actionable (within their sphere of influence) through provisions elsewhere in Principle 3, or other parts of the Standard. The intent of culturally appropriate engagement is to prevent violations of Indigenous Peoples rights.

Additional supporting information for the implementation of this Criterion is available in the FSC Canada FPIC Guidance document.

- 3.4.1 There is no evidence that the rights, customs and culture of Indigenous Peoples as defined in UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169 are violated by The Organization.
- 3.4.2 Where evidence that rights, customs and culture of Indigenous Peoples as defined in UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169 have been violated by The Organization, The Organization documents the situation, including steps to a just and fair redress for the violation of the rights, customs and culture of Indigenous Peoples, in keeping with the *dispute** resolution process in Indicator 3.2.5.

- 3.5** *The Organization**, through *engagement** with *Indigenous Peoples**, shall identify sites which are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance and for which these *Indigenous Peoples** hold *legal** or *customary rights**. These sites shall be recognized by *The Organization** and their management, and/or *protection** shall be agreed through *engagement** with these *Indigenous Peoples**. (C3.3 P&C V4, revised to POL 30-401)
- 3.5.1 Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance, for which Indigenous Peoples hold legal or customary rights are identified through culturally appropriate *engagement**.
- 3.5.2 Agreed upon measures to protect such sites are documented and implemented through culturally appropriate *engagement** with Indigenous Peoples. When Indigenous Peoples determine that physical identification of sites in documentation or on maps would threaten the value or protection of the sites, other means are used.
- 3.5.3 Wherever sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance, are newly observed or discovered, *management activities** in the vicinity cease immediately until protective measures have been agreed to with the Indigenous Peoples, and as directed by local and national laws.
- 3.6** *The Organization** shall *uphold** the right of *Indigenous Peoples** to protect and utilize their *traditional knowledge** and shall compensate *local communities** for the utilization of such knowledge and their *intellectual property**. A *binding agreement** as per Criterion 3.3 shall be concluded between *The Organization** and the *Indigenous Peoples** for such utilization through *Free, Prior and Informed Consent** before utilization takes place, and shall be consistent with the *protection** of *intellectual property** rights. (C3.4 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

The intent of this Criterion is to prevent the commercialization of traditional knowledge without compensation by The Organization for the purposes of creating a product and/or service. It is not meant to prevent the sharing of information by Indigenous Peoples for the purposes of management plan development.

- 3.6.1 Traditional knowledge and intellectual property is protected and is only used when the acknowledged owners of that traditional knowledge and intellectual property have provided their Free, Prior and Informed Consent formalized through a binding agreement.
- 3.6.2 Indigenous Peoples are compensated according to the binding agreement reached through Free, Prior and Informed Consent for the use of traditional knowledge and intellectual property for commercial purposes.

PRINCIPLE* 4: COMMUNITY RELATIONS

The Organization* shall contribute to maintaining or enhancing the social and economic well-being of local communities*. (P4 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

Local community vs. Indigenous Peoples:

In this Standard, a local community refers to a non-indigenous group of people. A local community and an Indigenous community (referred to in this Standard as Indigenous Peoples) may occupy overlapping areas within a Management Unit.

In general, Principle 4 addresses requirements regarding local communities unless the Indicator specifies Indigenous Peoples. The inclusion of Indigenous Peoples in Criteria 4.3, 4.4, 4.5 and 4.6 is based on the decision by FSC Canada to separate rights-based negotiations and processes from business related negotiations and agreements. Furthermore, the topics covered by these Criteria are not implicitly included within the agreement requirements in Principle 3. However, it should be noted that Indigenous Peoples and The Organization may choose to address these topics such as opportunities for employment, training, economic development or impact mitigation through agreements and processes established in Principle 3.

Local community vs. Affected Stakeholders:

Local communities are included in the definition of affected stakeholder therefore most requirements applicable to affected stakeholders will apply to local communities. However, additional consideration for local communities is identified throughout this Principle, such as those related to employment and training opportunities, social and economic development, avoidance and mitigation of negative impacts, as well as a specific dispute resolution process.

Rights and other Concerns Related to Stakeholders & Individuals:

Stakeholders (if not a local community) and individual rights and concerns are not addressed in Principle 4. Instead, all legal or customary rights pertaining to affected stakeholders or individuals are addressed in Principle 1. Other affected stakeholders, interested stakeholders and individuals' concerns are addressed in Criterion 7.6.

Applicability of Local community Rights and Traditional Knowledge in the Standard:

In the Canadian context of forest management and related activities, local communities have legal rights related to general human rights and access to public land. There are few known instances where local communities have legal collective rights related to management activities on public land. However, as a group who inhabit a specific area, it is necessary to maintain the resources they utilize as well as their quality of life.

In Canada, customary rights (or customary laws) have been identified for:

- 1) communities established before colonization; and
- 2) communities who developed their own customs, practices, traditions and recognizable group identities separate from their First Nation, Inuit and European ancestors (e.g. Métis) (<https://www.aadnc-aandc.gc.ca/eng/1100100014419/1100100014420>).

No customary rights have been established for non-Indigenous local communities. However, the evolutionary nature of legal frameworks could potentially result in a Canadian local community gaining customary rights status for long-held practices. The intent of the Indicators related to customary rights in this Principle is to make them applicable only once a local community has established such customary rights.

In addition, according to the FAO and United Nations documents (UN-REDD Guidelines on FPIC interpretation), FPIC should apply to Indigenous Peoples and to minority groups who share common characteristics with Indigenous Peoples. Local communities in Canada do not share these characteristics.

Furthermore, no traditional knowledge and intellectual property have been knowingly identified and recognized for local communities. Criterion 4.8 is applicable when strong evidence is provided by the local community to demonstrate ownership of traditional knowledge and intellectual property.

4.1 *The Organization** shall identify the *local communities** that exist within the *Management Unit** and those that are affected by *management activities**. *The Organization** shall then, through *engagement** with these *local communities**, identify their rights of *tenure**, their rights of access to and use of *forest** resources and *ecosystem services**, their *customary rights** and *legal** rights and obligations, that apply within the *Management Unit**.

4.1.1 *Local communities** that may be affected by *forest management activities** are identified.

4.1.2 Through culturally appropriate *engagement** with the *local communities** identified in Indicator 4.1.1, the following are documented and/or mapped:

- 1) Legal and customary rights;
- 2) A summary of means by which these rights identified in 4.1.2.1 may be addressed is provided by The Organization;
- 3) The interests of *local communities** related to *forest management activities** in the Management Unit;
- 4) The benefits, goods and/or services from the Management Unit used by *local communities**;
- 5) Areas where there are conflicts affecting or related to The Organization's activities. The conflict may be between *local communities**, governments, Indigenous Peoples and/or others.

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex F for more guidance related to culturally appropriate engagement.

4.2 *The Organization* shall recognize and *uphold* the *legal* and *customary rights* of *local communities* to maintain control over *management activities* within or related to the *Management Unit* to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources, *lands and territories*. Delegation by *local communities* of control over *management activities* to third parties requires *Free, Prior and Informed Consent*. (C2.2 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

This Criterion applies to rights identified in 4.1.2.1. Refer to the Intent Box at the beginning of Principle 4.

4.2.1 Through culturally appropriate *engagement**, *local communities** are informed of when, where and how they can comment on and request modification to *management activities** to the extent necessary to protect their rights identified in 4.1.2.1.

4.2.2 The legal and customary rights of *local communities** related to *management activities** are not violated by The Organization.

4.2.3 Where evidence exists that legal and customary rights of *local communities** related to *management activities** have been violated, the situation is corrected, if necessary, through culturally appropriate *engagement** and/or through the *dispute** resolution process detailed in Criteria 1.6 or 4.6.

4.3 The Organization* shall provide reasonable* opportunities for employment, training and other services to local communities*, contractors and suppliers proportionate to scale* and intensity* of its management activities*. (C4.1 P&C V4)

- 4.3.1 The Organization ensures that reasonable opportunities for employment, training and other services, proportionate to the scale and intensity of the *management activities** are communicated and provided to affected *local communities** and Indigenous Peoples, local *workers**, local contractors and local suppliers, either directly or through collaboration.

INTENT BOX

These opportunities may be either directly or indirectly linked to The Organization's management activities. This differs from Criterion 4.4, which requires that additional activities, not linked to management activities, need to be implemented and/or supported.

4.4 The Organization* shall implement additional activities, through engagement* with local communities*, that contribute to their social and economic development, proportionate to the scale*, intensity* and socio-economic impact of its management activities*. (C4.4 P&C V4)

- 4.4.1 In proportion to the scale and intensity of *management activities** affecting the community, opportunities for local social and economic development are identified through culturally appropriate *engagement** with affected *local communities** and Indigenous Peoples and/or other relevant organizations identified by the *local community** or the Indigenous Peoples.
- 4.4.2 Projects and other activities that contribute to local social and economic benefits and are relative to the scale of the socio-economic impact of *management activities** are implemented and/or supported.

4.5 The Organization*, through engagement* with local communities*, shall take action to identify, avoid and mitigate significant* negative social, environmental and economic impacts of its management activities* on affected communities. The action taken shall be proportionate to the scale*, intensity* and risk* of those activities and negative impacts. (C4.4 P&C V4)

- 4.5.1 Through culturally appropriate *engagement** with affected *local communities** and Indigenous Peoples, significant negative social, environmental and economic impacts of *management activities** are identified.
- 4.5.2 Through culturally appropriate *engagement** with affected *local communities** and Indigenous Peoples, measures to avoid and/or mitigate significant negative impacts identified in Indicator 4.5.1 are determined and implemented.

4.6 The Organization*, through engagement* with local communities*, shall have mechanisms for resolving grievances and providing fair compensation* to local communities* and individuals with regard to the impacts of management activities* of The Organization*. (C4.5 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex E for details describing how disputes are addressed throughout the Standard.

- 4.6.1 A system is in place whereby *complaints** can be made known to The Organization related to impact of *forest management activities** on affected *local communities** and Indigenous Peoples.
- 4.6.2 A publicly available *dispute** resolution process that can be adapted through culturally appropriate *engagement** is in place, including mechanisms to address *disputes** of substantial magnitude that include provisions for ceasing operations.
- 4.6.3 *Complaints** are responded to in a timely manner. *Complaints** that are not resolved are elevated to *disputes** and are being addressed via a *dispute** resolution process.
- 4.6.4 An up-to-date record of *complaints** and *disputes** is maintained, and includes:
 - 1) Steps taken to resolve *complaints** and *disputes**;
 - 2) Outcomes of all *complaints** and *dispute** resolution processes, including, where applicable, *fair compensation**; and
 - 3) Unresolved *disputes**, the reasons they are not resolved, and how they will be resolved.
- 4.6.5 The *dispute** resolution process as established in Indicator 4.6.2 is implemented, following the provisions for ceasing of operations for *disputes of substantial magnitude**.

4.7 The Organization*, through engagement* with local communities*, shall identify sites which are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance, and for which these local communities* hold legal* or customary rights*. These sites shall be recognized by The Organization*, and their management and/or protection* shall be agreed through engagement* with these local communities*.

- 4.7.1 Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance for which *local communities** hold legal and/or customary rights are identified through culturally appropriate *engagement** and are recognized by The Organization.
- 4.7.2 Measures to protect such sites are agreed, documented and implemented through culturally appropriate *engagement** with *local communities**. When *local communities** determine that physical identification of sites in documentation or on maps would threaten the value or protection of the sites, other means are used.

- 4.7.3 When sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance are newly observed or discovered, *management activities** in the vicinity will cease immediately until protective measures have been agreed to with the *local communities**, and as directed by local and national laws.

INTENT BOX

Newly observed or discovered sites of special significance should be recognized as a result of a credible process, such as an archaeological excavation or other similar investigation.

- 4.8 ***The Organization* shall uphold* the right of local communities* to protect and utilize their traditional knowledge* and shall compensate local communities* for the utilization of such knowledge and their intellectual property*. A binding agreement* as per Criterion 3.3 shall be concluded between The Organization* and the local communities* for such utilization through Free, Prior and Informed Consent* before utilization takes place, and shall be consistent with the protection* of intellectual property* rights.***

INTENT BOX

Criterion 4.8 is applicable when strong evidence is provided by the local community to demonstrate ownership of traditional knowledge and intellectual property. Refer to the Intent Box at the beginning of Principle 4.

The use of Indigenous Peoples' traditional knowledge is addressed in Criterion 3.6.

- 4.8.1 Traditional knowledge and intellectual property of the *local community** are protected and are only used when the *local community** has agreed through a binding agreement and compensation is provided according to the agreement.

PRINCIPLE* 5: BENEFITS FROM THE FOREST*

The Organization* shall efficiently manage the range of multiple products and services of the **Management Unit*** to maintain or enhance **long-term* economic viability*** and the range of social and environmental benefits.

- 5.1** **The Organization*** shall identify, produce, or enable the production of, diversified benefits and/or products, based on the range of resources and **ecosystem services*** existing in the **Management Unit*** in order to strengthen and diversify the local economy proportionate to the **scale*** and **intensity*** of **management activities***. (C5.2 and 5.4 V4)

INTENT BOX

The Organization is expected to make reasonable attempts to identify the range of products and benefits available in the Management Unit. The Organization is expected to diversify the production of benefits and services from the Management Unit as much as their tenure rights permit. For commercial operations, a diversification of commercial opportunities is expected to increase adaptability to market fluctuations and thereby increase the likelihood of long-term economic viability of The Organization. In addition, diversification provides the basis for contributing to a diversified and more stable local economy.

This Criterion does not require that products and services are harvested, developed or marketed by The Organization itself. However, it is expected that The Organization provides opportunities to interested local entrepreneurs and individuals to develop, process and market products and services derived from the Management Unit, to retrieve products and services from the Management Unit, or to utilize the benefits and products from the Management Unit, if required.

The Organization is not required to provide opportunities or pursue activities that would prevent it from achieving its own management objectives or conformance with the Principles and Criteria. Examples of how The Organization can provide such opportunities may include permitting local people and enterprises to conduct the following activities:

- Harvesting of non-timber forest products,
- recreational or (eco-) tourism activities within the Management Unit,
- collection of dead wood for local processing.

The Organization may only permit activities if they are within the limit of The Organization's tenure rights. Otherwise, it is reasonable that The Organization works within its sphere of influence, where appropriate.

This Criterion recognizes that the extent of possible diversification depends on the specific situation (e.g. existing range of resources, ecosystem services available and opportunity costs) of the Management Unit.

This Criterion also recognizes that continual diversification is not required. Not all potentially marketable products from a Management Unit are always saleable, or command a consistent price. Furthermore, benefits produced by the Management Unit may not be of direct commercial or economic benefit but they may be of indirect benefit to the local economy.

The development of ecosystem services remains optional in this FSC standard. If The Organization wants to make promotional claims regarding ecosystem services, conformance to FSC International procedure FSC-PRO-30-006 on "Ecosystem Services Procedure: Impact Demonstration and Market Tools" will need to be demonstrated.

- 5.1.1 A range of ecosystem services, non-timber and timber forest resources and products that could strengthen and diversify the local economy are identified.
- 5.1.2 Consistent with management objectives and within the limits of The Organization's tenure rights, some of the resources, products and services identified in Indicator 5.1.1 are produced and/or made available for others to produce, as a means to strengthen and diversify the local economy.
- 5.1.3 When The Organization makes FSC promotional claims regarding the provision of ecosystem services, it is in conformance with the procedure FSC-PRO-30-006 on "Ecosystem Services Procedure: Impact Demonstration and Market Tools".

INTENT BOX

This Indicator is applicable only if the applicant intends on making ecosystem service claims, otherwise, it is optional.

5.2 ***The Organization** shall normally harvest products and services from the *Management Unit** at or below a level which can be permanently sustained. (C5.6 V4)**

- 5.2.1 Analysis and calculation of harvest levels for timber forest products are done frequently enough (at least every 10 years) to ensure they remain current with respect to harvest activities, natural disturbances, management objectives, and supporting information, such as inventories.

The analysis and calculation of harvest levels are based upon:

- 1) A precautionary approach that reflects the quality of information and assumptions used;
- 2) Management objectives and strategies as set out in the management plan, including those for *restoration** ;
- 3) Current management practices, performance and success of *silvicultural systems**;
- 4) *Best available information** on growth and yield;
- 5) Best available and quality inventory data;
- 6) Volume and area reductions caused by mortality and decay, as well as natural disturbances, such as fire, insects and disease;
- 7) Adherence to all other requirements in this Standard;
- 8) Operational constraints;
- 9) Harvest projections or wood supply calculations that extend to a planning horizon long enough to provide quality results. A rationale for the choice of the planning horizon is provided, but is at least 80 years;
- 10) Future forest condition objectives as/if identified in the forest management plan; and
- 11) Available sensitivity analyses of the factors that apply to harvest level calculations, including the effects of climate change when growth and yield projections are available.

INTENT BOX

It is acceptable for some issues, such as mortality and decay, not to be incorporated into the analysis and calculation of harvest levels, if these issues are considered through other means, such as during harvest level allocations.

- 5.2.2 Based on the timber harvesting level as analyzed for Indicator 5.2.1, a maximum allowable annual cut for timber is determined, with respect to these conditions:
- 1) The maximum allowable annual cut does not impair the ability of the Management Unit to continue to provide the products and services, ecosystem functions and ecosystem services of the unit.
 - 2) Temporary or *long-term** changes in the yield or standing volumes of any specific forest product arising from *management activities** are permitted, provided that these fluctuations do not impair the achievement of the objectives described in the management plan through the mid- and *long-term**.

INTENT BOX

Fluctuations in the yield and in harvest rates can be the consequence of disturbances or of a planned management strategy. It is expected that in situations of major disturbance, fluctuations could be more significant and occur over a longer period.

- 5.2.3 Actual annual timber harvest is recorded and the averaged level of harvest over a defined period (maximum of 10 years) does not exceed the allowable cut determined in Indicator 5.2.2.
- 5.2.4 The harvest of commercial non-timber forest products under control of The Organization does not exceed a level that can be sustained. Sustainable harvest levels for non-timber forest products are based on *best available information**.

5.3 *The Organization shall demonstrate that the positive and negative externalities* of operations are included in the *management plan**. (C5.1 V4)**

- 5.3.1 Management planning takes into account the *long-term** positive and negative environmental and social impacts of *management activities**.

5.4 *The Organization shall use local processing, local services, and local value adding to meet the requirements of *The Organization** where these are available, proportionate to *scale**, *intensity** and *risk**. If these are not locally available, *The Organization** shall make *reasonable** attempts to help establish these services. (C5.2 V4)**

INTENT BOX

The intent of this Criterion is for The Organization to promote further socio-economic benefits through economic opportunities beyond direct employment by The Organization. The desired outcome is that The Organization stimulates the local economy through the purchase of relevant local services and products, or supports the creation of relevant new local services and supply of relevant local products. In areas where local service providers are already in place, the preference is to support these businesses before hiring other service providers who are not local.

- 5.4.1 Where cost, quality and capacity of non-local and local options are at least equivalent, local goods, services, processing and value-added facilities are used.

5.4.2 Reasonable attempts are made to encourage and/or support capacity where local goods, services, processing and value-added facilities are not available.

5.5 *The Organization shall demonstrate through its planning and expenditures proportionate to *scale**, *intensity** and *risk**, its commitment to *long-term** economic viability*. (C5.1 V4)**

5.5.1 Sufficient expenditures and investments are made to implement the management plan in order to meet this Standard and to ensure economic viability of The Organization over the *long-term**.

INTENT BOX

If The Organization is a for-profit business, economic viability means that The Organization has the objective to be profitable over time. The intent of this Indicator is that The Organization generates a return on invested capital that is sufficient to ensure stable operations and investment in the business.

PRINCIPLE* 6: ENVIRONMENTAL VALUES* AND IMPACTS

The Organization* shall maintain, conserve* and/or restore* ecosystem services* and environmental values* of the Management Unit*, and shall avoid, repair or mitigate negative environmental impacts. (P6 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

Best Available Information

Several Indicators in this Principle require that best available information be used to provide a baseline for management activities or as a basis for analyses in subsequent Indicators. Organizations are expected to implement these requirements in consideration of an FPIC process, as described in Principle 3, that is inclusive of information sharing related to legal and customary rights as well as site, stand, and landscape values of economic, social, and cultural significance to Indigenous Peoples.

The definition of best available information provides general direction on the type of information to be gathered and the extent of effort required to gather the information. To place appropriate limits on what should be involved in gathering best available information, the definition notes that it should be constrained by reasonable effort and cost. The intent of the term reasonable is to emphasize that limits, such as cost and practicality, exist on the expectations of the effort required to gather information.

Refer to the Glossary for a full definition of best available information.

Engagement with Indigenous Peoples

Several Indicators in this Principle require engagement with Indigenous Peoples. The Organization is expected to implement these obligations in a manner consistent with the specific requirements of Indicator 3.1.2.

Maps

Where maps or mapped information is required by this Principle, evidence of digital files, instead of hard-copy maps, is sufficient.

- 6.1 The Organization* shall assess environmental values* in the Management Unit* and those values outside the Management Unit* potentially affected by management activities*. This assessment shall be undertaken with a level of detail, scale* and frequency that is proportionate to the scale*, intensity* and risk* of management activities*, and is sufficient for the purpose of deciding the necessary conservation* measures, and for detecting and monitoring possible negative impacts of those activities.**

INTENT BOX

Information required by the Indicators in this Criterion is used in the assessment of other Indicators, primarily in Principle 6 and Principle 9. Conformance with these Indicators, that require gathering or collating of information, 'queues up' subsequent analyses or management actions required in later Indicators.

- 6.1.1 *Best available information** is used to identify and define the state and condition of regional- and landscape-scale environmental values within and, where potentially affected by *management activities**, outside of the Management Unit.

Consistent with the scale, intensity and risk of the operation, *best available information** includes:

- 1) Forest cover (maps and quantitative summaries);
- 2) Distributions of *forest types**, *age-classes** and patch sizes (as required by Indicator 6.1.3) (quantitative summaries);
- 3) *Road** networks (maps and quantitative summaries);

- 4) *Hydrologic features** (maps);
- 5) Lake, stream and wetland classifications including identification of fish-bearing water bodies (maps and quantitative summaries);
- 6) Existing carbon stores, where readily available (quantitative information);
- 7) Percent of *protected area** by ecosystem classification unit;
- 8) Rare ecosystems (maps and quantitative summaries);
- 9) Identification of species at the edge of their natural ranges and outlier populations; and
- 10) Status of habitat (known locations, trends, extent of area) for *species at risk** that use forest habitats and habitats affected by forest management (quantitative summaries and range maps).

6.1.2 *Best available information** is used to identify and define the state and condition of *stand**- and site-scale environmental values within the Management Unit.

Consistent with the scale, intensity and risk of the operation, *best available information** includes:

- 1) Point-specific wildlife values and wildlife habitat values (e.g. mineral licks, stick nests of herons and eagles) (mapped information);
- 2) Locations known to be of use by *species at risk** and access-sensitive species (e.g. den sites, nests, areas of traditional use) (mapped information);
- 3) Sensitive sites, including steep slopes, shallow soils, moist soils, wetlands, and soils subject to compaction (e.g. structured clay) (mapped information);
- 4) Spawning grounds and other important aquatic sites (e.g. wetlands with a history of providing feeding areas for moose) (mapped information).

INTENT BOX

As with many Indicators, the requirements of this Indicator are to be addressed consistent with the scale, intensity and risk of the operation. The nature of some of the values identified in this Indicator may be transitory. For example, stick nests are not permanent features on the landscape, therefore, it is reasonable for those requirements to be addressed only relative to the operations identified within the short-term planning horizon (which is typically one to ten years). This is consistent with the approach taken in Indicator 6.2.2, which requires impacts of stand-level values be assessed prior to implementing management activities.

6.1.3 Using *best available information** and appropriate to the scale, intensity and risk of *forest management activities**, an assessment of the current forest is made, addressing:

- 1) The distribution of *forest types** (quantitative information);
- 2) The distribution of *forest types** by age classes (quantitative information); and
- 3) The range of natural disturbance sizes and sizes of post-disturbance remnant patches.

INTENT BOX

Analyses required in Indicators 6.1.3 and 6.1.4 are used in subsequent Indicators that address setting of targets for different aspects of forest condition (i.e. Indicator 6.8.1 - forest community composition, and Indicator 6.8.3 - forest patches). Although RNV analysis is generally considered to be more robust and

appropriate for identifying preferred future forest conditions, the Indicator also addresses the use of PIC analysis, recognizing that the data and effort required for RONV may make that approach impractical.

The Organization may elect to use a mix of RONV and PIC analyses based on the condition of their forest, for use in the subsequent Criterion 6.8 Indicators.

The Indicator includes requirements to characterize the present forest by age classes and assess natural conditions of forest types by age class. This requirement is intended to recognize that some age classes may be broad, such as in Great Lakes-St. Lawrence and Acadian forest types, and may include classes of multi- or all-aged forest.

Indigenous Peoples' traditional use of a forest is consistent with the concept of pre-industrial forests as described in the Glossary.

It is the intent that all reasonably available data be considered in the analyses for Indicators 6.1.3 and 6.1.4, and reasonable and defensible interval classes (i.e. for age classes and disturbance sizes) also be considered.

6.1.4 An assessment of the *range of natural variation (RONV)** of the forest is completed. If sufficient data are not available to complete a *RONV** assessment, an assessment of the *pre-industrial condition* (PIC*)* is completed. The *RONV** or *PIC** analysis includes:

- 1) An assessment of the natural range of the amount of each *forest type**;
- 2) An assessment of the natural range of *forest types** by age class; and
- 3) An assessment of the natural range of disturbance sizes and sizes of post-disturbance remnant patches.

6.1.5 Assessments of environmental values identified in Indicators 6.1.1 and 6.1.2 are updated with sufficient frequency to conduct adaptive management depending on the scale, intensity and risk of *management activities**.

Assessments are provided in a manner such that:

- 1) Impacts of *management activities** on the identified environmental values and risks to these values can be assessed as per Criterion 6.2;
- 2) Necessary conservation measures to protect values can be identified as per Criterion 6.3; and
- 3) Monitoring of impacts or environmental changes can be conducted as per Principle 8.

INTENT BOX

The frequency with which assessments of environmental values should be updated varies with the nature of the values themselves. It is reasonable that assessments be updated based on the period over which there may be a reasonable expectation of a change in status of a value, and the period over which it is possible to detect the effects of management. Therefore, for example, it is likely that the status of habitat for a species at risk be updated more frequently than information on lake, stream, and wetland classification.

6.2 Prior to the start of site-disturbing activities, *The Organization shall identify and assess the *scale**, *intensity** and *risk** of potential impacts of *management activities** on the identified *environmental values**. (C6.1 P&C V4)**

6.2.1 Appropriate to the scale, intensity and risk of the operation, an assessment is conducted identifying potential impacts, by comparing landscape-level conditions of key environmental values at the start of the present forest management plan to projected future conditions for the *near term**, and where practical, for the *long-term** as well. At a minimum, the assessment considers:

- 1) *Age-class** distribution;
- 2) *Forest type** distribution;
- 3) Patch size distribution;
- 4) *Road** density by *road**-type; and
- 5) Spatial distribution of anthropogenic disturbed areas.

INTENT BOX

For this Indicator, the context for comparison of present and future conditions of environmental values of the forest is that a period of 5 to 10 years is normally used for the near-term and 100 years or more is normally used to represent the long-term.

This Indicator contains the term 'where practical' to recognize that it is difficult and generally of less utility to make long-term predictions for road density by road type and for the spatial distribution of disturbed areas. Therefore, it is reasonable for the assessment of long-term potential impacts made to address this Indicator's requirements to focus on age-class and forest type distributions.

6.2.2 Impacts on *stand** level values are assessed prior to implementing *management activities**. Appropriate to the scale, intensity and risk of the operations, assessments identify impacts on *stand** and site qualities including:

- 1) Coarse woody debris;
- 2) Density of standing dead and live trees;
- 3) Residual patch size and species of residuals;
- 4) Ecological values associated with wetland and riparian zones;
- 5) HCVs that occur at a local scale (e.g. *stands** of rare trees, important bird migration sites); and
- 6) Environmental values identified in Indicator 6.1.2.

INTENT BOX

This Indicator does not require that measurements of the listed values be provided for each stand in which operations are undertaken. The assessment may be a comparison of predicted levels of post-operational values with those determined to be appropriate for the forest or forest types based on reasonable benchmarks (e.g. for values such as standing dead and live trees) or efforts to ensure no impairment of important values (e.g. riparian values and HCVs).

The requirement of this Indicator to assess impacts "prior to implementing management activities" can be addressed by assessing impacts at the start of the forest management planning period, or at the start of annual planning of operations.

Identified impacts should reflect the silvicultural system used in managing harvest areas.

6.3 The Organization* shall identify and implement effective actions to prevent negative impacts of management activities* on the environmental values*, and to mitigate and repair those that occur, proportionate to the scale*, intensity* and risk* of these impacts. (C6.1 P&C V4)

6.3.1 Appropriate to the scale, intensity and risk of the *forest management activities**, management plans or associated documents (e.g. Ground Rules, Standard Operating Procedures, etc.) identify means to protect soils from physical damage and prevent negative impacts, based on *best management practices**.

The *best management practices** related to protection of soils from physical damage address the following:

- 1) Prior identification of unstable soils and ground surfaces, and sites sensitive to compaction, rutting, and erosion;
- 2) Construction of *roads** and landings on unstable soils and ground surfaces and unstable slopes;
- 3) Constructing and maintaining *roads** and implementation of all forest operations to avoid or minimize erosion;
- 4) Use of alternative harvesting and site preparation equipment (e.g. low ground pressure equipment) and/or other mitigation measures, such as seasonal timing, and temporary suspension of activities during unfavourable weather to minimize soil rutting and compaction; and
- 5) Identification of precautionary damage thresholds.

6.3.2 The means identified in Indicator 6.3.1 to protect soils from physical damage and prevent negative impacts are effectively implemented.

6.3.3 Appropriate to the scale, intensity and risk of the *forest management activities**, management plans or associated documents (e.g. Ground Rules, Standard Operating Procedures, etc.) identify means to protect soils from nutrient loss and prevent negative impacts, based on *best management practices**.

The *best management practices** related to nutrient loss address the following:

- 1) Identification of sites sensitive to nutrient loss;
- 2) Use of delimbing-at-stump and/or slash dispersal on sensitive sites;
- 3) Use of winter harvesting on sensitive sites;
- 4) Maintenance of a diversity of plants and trees on site; and
- 5) Identification of precautionary thresholds to protect soils from nutrient loss on sensitive sites.

INTENT BOX

In Canada, under most commercial forest management regimes and on most forest sites, nutrient removal due to logging is not significant. This is addressed in this Indicator by recognizing scale, intensity and risk, and by specifically limiting the actions required in the numbered points to sensitive sites.

6.3.4 The means identified in Indicator 6.3.3 to protect soils from nutrient loss and prevent negative impacts are effectively implemented.

6.3.5 Appropriate to the scale, intensity and risk of the *forest management activities**, management plans or associated documents (e.g. Ground Rules, Standard Operating Procedures, etc.) identify means to avoid or minimize loss of *productive forest** area based on *best management practices**.

The *best management practices** related to loss of *productive forest** area address the following:

- 1) Slash management (e.g. burning, piling, re-distribution);
- 2) Regeneration of *roads**, landings and skid trails;
- 3) Maximum corridor widths for different classes of *roads**;
- 4) Minimizing the areal extent of landings; and
- 5) Identification of precautionary thresholds.

6.3.6 The means identified in Indicator 6.3.5 to avoid or minimize the loss of *productive forest** area and prevent negative impacts are effectively implemented.

6.3.7 *Management activities** prevent negative impacts to carbon values.

INTENT BOX

Carbon values in managed forests are protected by avoiding damage to forest soils and ensuring harvest levels are sustainable, as addressed by Indicators 6.3.1-6.3.6 and 5.2.1-5.2.3.

6.3.8 Where precautionary thresholds have been exceeded, or where *management activities** have caused negative impacts as related to Indicators 6.3.1 – 6.3.7, measures are adopted to prevent further damage, and negative impacts are mitigated and/or repaired.

6.4 *The Organization shall protect *rare* species** and *threatened* species** and their *habitats** in the *Management Unit** through *conservation* zones*, *protection* areas*, *connectivity** and/or (where necessary) other direct measures for their survival and viability. These measures shall be proportionate to the *scale**, *intensity** and *risk** of *management activities** and to the *conservation** status and ecological requirements of the *rare** and *threatened* species**. *The Organization** shall take into account the geographic range and ecological requirements of *rare** and *threatened* species** beyond the boundary of the *Management Unit**, when determining the measures to be taken inside the *Management Unit**. (C6.2 P&C V4)**

6.4.1 *Best available information** is used to develop a list of *species at risk** known or strongly suspected to exist within and adjacent to the Management Unit, and to identify the habitats of the *species at risk**. The list is presented in the management plan or associated documents and is updated annually. The list of *species at risk** includes:

- 1) All species, subspecies, and designated populations formally listed in schedules referenced in federal or provincial endangered species/*species at risk** legislation, or provincial wildlife/biodiversity legislation that have been classified as Endangered, Threatened, Vulnerable, Special Concern or similar designations; and

- 2) All species that have been assessed as 'at-risk' designation by bodies formally recognized in federal or provincial endangered species legislation (e.g. the Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC), and equivalent provincial bodies).

INTENT BOX

Official FSC language related to Criterion 6.4 requires that it address rare species and threatened species. This is somewhat confusing because these phrases have different meaning in a Canadian context from those identified in FSC reference material. For this Criterion, the term species at risk is used rather than rare species and threatened species, as it is more clearly embodied in Canada's language regarding species whose survival is of concern. The two parts of this Indicator correspond to the differences between those species that have been regulated (or listed) as species at risk in federal or provincial legislation (see point 1 in this Indicator), and those species that have been assessed as species at risk by COSEWIC or a similar provincial assessment body, as indicated in point 2.

This Indicator requires that the habitats of species at risk be identified. In most circumstances, it is not practical to identify the specific habitats of wide-ranging species at risk, other than to note their broad habitat affiliations. In these circumstances, it would be reasonable for the locations of particular species at risk features (such as nests or concentrations of plants) to be identified (while taking into account the requirements of Indicator 9.1.5 regarding the need to keep information on sensitive sites confidential).

Species at risk that are of concern to Indigenous Peoples have been identified by the Aboriginal Traditional Knowledge Subcommittee of COSEWIC.

6.4.2 Plans are developed by *qualified specialists** to protect and manage the habitat of those *species at risk** identified in Indicator 6.4.1 that may be affected by *forest management activities**. The plans address the following:

- 1) Identification of potential impacts of *management activities** on *species at risk**, their conservation status and habitat associations;
- 2) Means to address protection of *species at risk** and their habitats through the use of *protected areas**, *designated conservation lands**, managing for habitat *connectivity**, provision of contiguous tracts of habitat, access management and other habitat management measures as appropriate; and
- 3) Social and economic concerns, and concerns of Indigenous Peoples.

Measures to address social and economic concerns do not constrain or impair efforts to protect and manage *species at risk** and their habitats.

INTENT BOX

Plans to address the needs of species at risk do not need to be approved federal or provincial agencies or plans, but can be documents written to fill a gap in existing direction from governments and their regulatory agencies. Plans written specifically for a Management Unit, however, should not conflict with higher-level plans that have regulatory approval unless they exceed requirements of those higher-level plans.

As described in Criterion 6.5, there is no expectation that owners of private lands will cede ownership of any portion of their property to create protected areas; therefore, it is not expected that protected areas will be a mechanism used in plans to protect species at risk on private lands.

Addressing social and economic concerns and the concerns of Indigenous Peoples is intended to support the effective development and implementation of a species plan.

Refer to the Glossary for a fuller definition of plans for species at risk.

Even though woodland caribou is addressed through a supplemental Indicator (6.4.5), Indicator 6.4.2 is applicable to all species at risk, including woodland caribou.

- 6.4.3 *Species at risk*^{*} and their habitats are protected through implementation of plans identified in Indicator 6.4.2 by The Organization or in collaboration with government resource management agencies, *overlapping tenure holders*^{*}, and Indigenous Peoples.
- 6.4.4 Where plans do not exist or are inadequate in addressing known risks to a species, a precautionary approach is applied. The precautionary approach is applied to management of forest landscapes, local habitat and other locations that are known to be important to the *species at risk*^{*}.
- 6.4.5 Management of boreal woodland caribou habitat is implemented following approach 6.4.5a, 6.4.5b, or 6.4.5c below.

INTENT BOX

Scope

This Indicator applies to boreal woodland caribou only. Refer to Annex G for information regarding mountain caribou.

Structure

There are three ways to conform with this Indicator as identified in Approach 6.4.5a, 6.4.5b, and 6.4.5c.

Approach 6.4.5a requires that a SARA-compliant² range plan based on the Range Plan Guidance for Woodland Caribou, Boreal Population (Environment and Climate Change Canada 2016) be implemented. If such a range plan has not been prepared, either Approach 6.4.5b or 6.4.5c may be employed.

The requirements for Approach 6.4.5b, which are based largely on the Federal Recovery Strategy (Environment Canada 2012), are articulated in Table 6.4.5. The requirements are increasingly stringent as circumstances regarding the condition of the caribou population and levels of habitat disturbance on the caribou range and the Management Unit present an increasing risk to the population.

Approach 6.4.5c permits other methods of habitat management to be implemented, provided they are based on best available information and peer-reviewed science and that their development includes the involvement of interested and affected stakeholders and affected Indigenous Peoples.

Terminology

This Indicator uses several terms that are critical to its effective use. Refer to the Glossary for definitions of: Critical habitat, Cumulative disturbance, Net expansion, and Range plan.

Integration of Conservation and Indigenous Measures in Caribou Conservation Planning

Various elements of this Standard address conservation measures at the landscape level, as well as Indigenous Peoples sites and values. Efforts to integrate protection measures at the local and landscape scale to achieve multiple objectives within caribou ranges are encouraged.

²A SARA (Species at Risk Act)-compliant range plan is a caribou habitat management plan that has been confirmed by Environment and Climate Change Canada (ECCC) as meeting the requirements of section 7.4 of the Federal Recovery Strategy for the Woodland Caribou, Boreal population, in Canada.

- 6.4.5a A *range plan** that is SARA-compliant and addresses caribou habitat management in a manner consistent with the content, measures and objectives identified in the *Range Plan** Guidance for Woodland Caribou, Boreal Population (Environment and Climate Change Canada 2016), or subsequent direction from Environment and Climate Change Canada that replaces or supplements the Guidance exists, and is being implemented. At a minimum, the content of the *range plan** being implemented includes:
- 1) An assessment of the status of the population in the range, supplemented by information on the status of the population in the Management Unit;
 - 2) An assessment of the habitat, including current habitat condition, *critical habitat**, and disturbance levels;
 - 3) Identification of important habitat or landscape features, including continuous tracts of *undisturbed habitat**, known calving areas, and travel corridors;
 - 4) Habitat management measures that will support self-sustaining caribou populations and protect *critical habitat**;
 - 5) A demonstration of how at least 65% *undisturbed habitat** in the range will be achieved or maintained over time;
 - 6) Incorporation of Indigenous Peoples' knowledge; and
 - 7) Monitoring of habitat condition.

INTENT BOX – Approach 6.4.5a

Approach 6.4.5a is applicable where appropriate range plans exist. The requirements related to range plan content identified above are key provisions identified by ECCC (2016). It is the expectation of the direction provided by ECCC (2016) that range plans will be prepared by government agencies. The Organization will have responsibilities, or shared responsibilities, for implementation of the range plan.

The requirement to assess the status of the caribou population in the range is intended to lead to a conclusion as to whether the population is stable, increasing, decreasing, or unknown.

Where only a portion of the Management Unit is covered by a *range plan** that meets the requirements of Approach 6.4.5a, the *range plan** is being implemented for that portion of the Management Unit, and Approach 6.4.5b or 6.4.5c is being implemented for the remainder of the Management Unit that is within a *caribou range** not covered by the *range plan**.

Where a *range plan** that meets the requirements of Approach 6.4.5a above does not exist, management of caribou habitat is being implemented following Approach 6.4.5b or 6.4.5c.

- 6.4.5b Management of caribou habitat is implemented following the requirements of Table 6.4.5. The following requirements are also addressed:
- 1) Updated measurements of *cumulative disturbance** are used, where available, provided that the methodology used in calculating *cumulative disturbance** and definitions of human-induced and natural disturbance are comparable to those employed by Environment Canada (2012).
 - 2) *Best efforts** are made to keep projected levels of *cumulative disturbance** on *caribou ranges** below 35% when a large natural disturbance occurs that significantly elevates the levels of *cumulative disturbance**. *Expert** input is used to identify how to adjust *management activities** following large natural disturbances.

Table 6.4.5. Requirements for the management of caribou habitat.

The numbers in the gray-shaded cells refer to the numbered requirements listed in the lower part of the table. The letters in the cells are for reference only.

Caribou range* Population Status	Range Risk Category (% cumulative disturbance*)	Management Unit Disturbance Category (% cumulative disturbance* in the portion of the Management Unit that overlaps caribou range*)	
		≤35%	>35%
Stable or Increasing	Low (≤20%)	Cell A: 1	Cell B: 2
	Moderate (>20-35%)	C: 1, 3	D: 2, 4
	High (>35%)	E: 2, 5	F: 2, 4, 5, 6
Decreasing or Unknown ³	Low (≤20%)		H: 2
	Moderate (>20-35%)		J: 2, 4, 5, 6
	High (>35%)		L: 2, 4, 5, 6
Description of Required Management Strategies			
1.	Carefully planned implementation of <i>forest management activities</i> * that follow a precautionary approach is permitted.		
2.	Carefully planned implementation of <i>forest management activities</i> * that follow a precautionary approach is permitted. Access is managed to minimize impacts on caribou and caribou habitat.		
3.	Planning efforts are in progress to maintain <i>cumulative disturbance</i> * within the Management Unit at ≤ 35%.		
4.	At least 50% of the <i>undisturbed habitat</i>* as of January 1, 2018 (using the most up-to-date data for disturbance available) in the portion of the Management Unit that is within a <i>caribou range</i>* is set aside from forest management for 30-50 years and remains reserved for the duration of that period. ECCC (2016) is used as a basis for identifying and managing <i>undisturbed habitat</i>* to be set aside. <i>Cumulative disturbances</i>* in the remaining areas only increase in the near-term when linked to a plan demonstrating a shift to ≤35% at the Management Unit level in the coming 30-50 years.		
5.	Planning efforts consider the level of <i>cumulative disturbance</i> * at the range level and contribute to efforts to maintain or reduce range disturbance to ≤ 35%.		
6.	Habitat <i>restoration</i> * is in progress.		

³ As described in the intent box for Approach 6.4.5b below, requirements associated with the population status of decreasing or unknown also apply to circumstances in which the population is stable or increasing due to extraordinary human intervention.

INTENT BOX – Approach 6.4.5b

35% Benchmark for Disturbed Area

Approach 6.4.5b uses a disturbance level of 35% as the high-risk threshold in Table 6.4.5 Requirements for the management of caribou habitat. The threshold is not intended to serve as a target level of disturbance, but as a level beyond which significant measures are necessary to address the state of habitat on caribou ranges. However, 35% is not a ‘tipping point’ beyond which caribou population will switch from sustainable to unsustainable. Rather, this management threshold, prescribed by Canada’s Federal Recovery Strategy for the boreal population of woodland caribou, is a point along a continuum of risk for boreal caribou that carries with it some uncertainty. Specifically, the Federal Recovery Strategy notes that, “This recovery strategy identifies 65% undisturbed habitat in a range as the disturbance management threshold, which provides a measurable probability (60%) for a local population to be self-sustaining. This threshold is considered a minimum threshold because at 65% undisturbed habitat there remains a significant risk (40%) that local populations will not be self-sustaining.”

The significance of the 35% benchmark is also recognized in the Range Plan Guidance for Woodland Caribou which states, “A demonstration of how at least 65% undisturbed habitat in the range will be achieved or maintained over time on the landscape is essential to the range plan.” This is recognized in the structure of Table 6.4.5 and several of its requirements.

Spatial Aspects

Some Management Units may include areas both within and outside caribou ranges. For this Approach, the management requirements identified in Table 6.4.5 are to be assessed based only on the area of the Forest Management Unit within caribou ranges.

If a Management Unit extends into more than one caribou range, this Approach’s requirements based on the level of disturbance within the Management Unit are to be addressed separately for the distinct portions of the Forest Management Unit in each caribou range.

Figures 1 to 3 in Annex G provide examples of the Approach’s requirements in different situations.

The Importance of Population Information

The framework in Table 6.4.5 is based on cumulative disturbance and caribou population status in caribou ranges. The conventional means of evaluating caribou population status is through the use of data on demographic trends, such as population growth rate, calf recruitment, and female survival. Table 6.4.5 recognizes this by specifically identifying management requirements associated with the status of populations within caribou ranges.

There may be circumstances in which a caribou population is stable or increasing due to, or with the assistance of, extraordinary human intervention, such as predator control or fencing of large areas. Based on the weight of evidence, if a population is believed to be stable or increasing only because of such measures, the requirements associated with the population status of “decreasing or unknown” should be used as a basis for evaluation of conformance with the requirements of Table 6.4.5.

Table 6.4.5 – Requirement 4

Requirement 4 involves an assessment of the state of caribou habitat within the Management Unit as of January 1, 2018 (using the most up-to-date data for disturbance available). The Organization may either compile information, or access already-existing spatial information, on the extent of disturbance in the Management Unit so that the requirement to set aside at least 50% of the undisturbed area for at least 30-50 years can be addressed.

The requirement states that ECCC (2016) is to be used as a basis for identifying and managing undisturbed habitat to be set aside. Refer to Section 5 (“Managing the 65% Undisturbed Habitat”) of ECCC (2016) for important considerations related to this direction.

Habitat Restoration

As it is used in Table 6.4.5 Requirements for the management of Caribou Habitat, habitat restoration is the process of returning habitat to a condition suitable for use by caribou and/or a state comparable to its condition prior to disturbance, in the context of the overall caribou range condition. The ultimate intent of habitat restoration is the recovery and persistence of caribou populations.

Approach 6.4.5b, Requirement 1 – Measures of cumulative disturbance

This requirement identifies that approaches other than those used by Environment Canada may be used in quantifying cumulative disturbance. This refers to the increasingly standard practice by provinces and territories to use provincial/territorial datasets to quantify disturbance, rather than the national disturbance layer in Environment Canada (2012).

Approach 6.4.5b, Requirement 2 – Best efforts to keep projected levels of disturbance below 35%

In the boreal forests, large natural disturbances, such as fire or windthrow, may significantly affect levels of cumulative disturbance in Management Units and caribou ranges and add to overall risk to caribou persistence in a caribou range. Large disturbances outside the Management Unit may affect the level of cumulative disturbance in the caribou range in which the Management Unit exists.

- 6.4.5c Through an *efficient collaborative process** with self-identified interested and affected stakeholders and affected Indigenous Peoples, a caribou conservation approach consistent with the *Range Plan** Guidance for Woodland Caribou, Boreal Population (ECCC 2016) is implemented for the Management Unit.

Informed by *best available information** and peer-reviewed science, the approach fosters stewardship of caribou habitat that supports self-sustaining caribou populations. The approach includes:

- 1) An assessment of the status of population in the Management Unit;
- 2) An assessment of the current habitat condition, *critical habitat**, and disturbance levels;
- 3) Identification of important habitat or landscape features, including continuous tracts of *undisturbed habitat**, known calving areas and travel corridors;
- 4) Habitat management measures that will support self-sustaining caribou populations and protect *critical habitat**;
- 5) Incorporation of a habitat disturbance threshold informed by *experts** to meet habitat requirements for the *caribou range** in which the Management Unit exists;
- 6) Respect for, and effective *engagement** of, Indigenous Peoples;
- 7) Incorporation of knowledge from interested and affected stakeholders;
- 8) Evaluation of socio-economic impacts; and
- 9) Monitoring of habitat condition and population response.

INTENT BOX – Approach 6.4.5c

In the absence of a range plan (Approach 6.4.5a) and in recognition that the scientific basis for managing caribou habitat continues to evolve, this Approach provides a means to implement management other than that identified by Approach 6.4.5b.

Engagement and Development of Caribou Conservation Plans

This Approach requires that engagement be undertaken with self-identified stakeholders and affected Indigenous Peoples. Efforts to engage could include contacting stakeholders with a history of FSC involvement and/or interest in conservation and informing them of the opportunity to participate. Stakeholders who express an interest are “self-identified”. There is no requirement for The Organization to engage stakeholders who do not express an interest.

Although the efficient collaborative process is similar to that identified in Criterion 6.5, the stakeholders and Indigenous Peoples involved need not be the same because the topics involved (i.e. caribou habitat management and Conservation Areas Networks) require different sets of knowledge and may involve different groups of stakeholders and Indigenous Peoples.

It is reasonable that The Organization, in collaboration with stakeholders and Indigenous Peoples, develop a process for efficient cooperation that may involve delegation of representation across groups that share common interests.

The results of the socio-economic evaluation (item 8 in the Indicator) are intended to improve the effectiveness of protection of caribou populations and their habitats.

Incorporation of New Science and Information

This Approach facilitates incorporation of new science and information into the means used to manage caribou habitat. The Approach requires the use of best available information and peer-reviewed science. This perspective is consistent with that identified in the Range Plan Guidance (ECCC 2016) that requires strong scientific evidence to support managing the range below the 65% undisturbed threshold.

Although Approach 6.4.5c can be based on the use of more recent and credible information and science, the nature of its requirements regarding assessment of habitat, habitat management measures, monitoring, etc. are consistent with those identified for Approach 6.4.5a.

- 6.4.6 Training is provided to all relevant *workers** in field operations and planning on the identification of *species at risk**, and on appropriate measures to take when a *species at risk** or sign of a *species at risk** is identified during field operations.
- 6.4.7 When a *species at risk** or sign of a *species at risk** is identified during field operations, protection measures consistent with the plans or precautionary approach identified in Indicators 6.4.3 and 6.4.4 are implemented and relevant information is immediately provided to the appropriate resource management agencies.

INTENT BOX

This Indicator refers to “signs” of a species at risk. Signs can include nests, tracks, dens, or other indications that a species exists in the forest.

6.4.8 The Organization demonstrates within the scope of its authority and within its *sphere of influence** how it is addressing the following:

- 1) Prevention of illegal hunting, trapping, and fishing of *species at risk**;
- 2) Collection of data on populations and habitats of *species at risk**;
- 3) Management of habitat for *species at risk**; and
- 4) Monitoring of habitats and populations of *species at risk**.

INTENT BOX

This Indicator's requirement that The Organization work within the scope of its authority is intended to recognize limitations on the legal responsibilities and rights associated with various tenure situations. Owners of private lands have more rights associated with activities such as access management, habitat manipulation, etc. than The Organizations that practice forestry on tenured lands, although all are subject to laws related species at risk.

6.5 The Organization* shall identify and protect *representative sample areas of *native ecosystems** and/or *restore** them to more *natural conditions**. Where *representative sample areas** do not exist or are insufficient, The Organization* shall *restore** a proportion of the *Management Unit** to more *natural conditions**. The size of the areas and the measures taken for their *protection** or *restoration** , including within *plantations**, shall be proportionate to the *conservation** status and value of the *ecosystems** at the *landscape** level, and the *scale**, *intensity** and *risk** of *management activities**. (C6.4 and 10.5 P&C V4 and Motion 2014#7)**

INTENT BOX

Overview

This Criterion addresses effort to add to the Conservation Area Network in the Management Unit by filling gaps in the existing network with new designated conservation lands and secondary conservation lands. The role of The Organization, as expressed through this Criterion's Indicators is to lay the groundwork for working towards and achieving a vision for the Conservation Areas Network.

Terminology

A Conservation Areas Network is comprised of those portions of Management Unit and adjacent area of ecological influence for which conservation is the primary, and in some circumstances, exclusive objective. On public forests, the Conservation Areas Network is the sum of protected areas and designated conservation lands. On private forests, the Conservation Areas Network also includes secondary conservation lands.

Protected areas are lands protected by legislation, regulation, or government land-use policy. Provincial parks are an example of these lands. Designated conservation lands are to be managed through the exclusion of forest management activities in recognition of their ecological and/or cultural values. Forest management is permitted on secondary conservation lands provided that it maintains the ecological and cultural qualities that are the basis of the lands' designation.

Refer to the Glossary for complete definitions of terms used in this Criterion.

Objectives - Public Forests

On public forests, a long-term objective of designated conservation lands is to transition to legal protected status (i.e. protected areas). However, it is recognized that the ultimate decision to move those designated conservation lands to protected status belongs to governments, not The Organization. Creation of protected areas is usually the product of broad government initiatives that often include engagement with stakeholders, communities, and with Indigenous Peoples. Lack of immediate increases in the regulated protected area network (i.e. within the period of validity of a certificate) should be viewed in the context of the complexity of the processes involved and the challenges inherent in balancing

ecological, social, economic and social interests. It does not necessarily imply failure to meet this Criterion's Indicators.

The process of attempting to move designated conservation lands within the traditional territories of Indigenous Peoples to legal protected status can only proceed based on their Free, Prior and Informed Consent.

Designated conservation lands are expected to be permanently protected whether or not they are successful in transitioning to legally protected status. In other words, in the indefinite time between identification of designated conservation lands and their movement to official legally protected status, the lands are to be exempted from forest management activities, except in relatively rare circumstances (described in Indicator 6.5.9).

Objectives - Private Forests

Privately owned forests are expected to contribute to the Conservation Areas Network through the identification and creation of designated conservation lands and secondary conservation lands. However, private landowners are not expected to attempt to move designated conservation lands or secondary conservation lands to legislated status on their lands.

Relationship with Principle 9

This Criterion focuses on identification of lands that serve to fill gaps in the Conservation Areas Network for which protection through the exclusion or limitation of forest management activities should be a priority. Therefore, there is overlap between the mandate of this Criterion and the role of High Conservation Values (HCVs), identified in Principle 9. As described in the HCV Common Guidance⁴, and consistent with the HCV Framework provided in this Standard (Annex D), HCVs can include areas that require total protection, and areas that can be used to produce forest products if management is consistent with maintaining or enhancing HCVs. Therefore, some areas identified as HCVs can also be designated conservation lands and secondary conservation lands, and others, while still playing important roles in management activities and conservation, may not be. The identification of designated conservation lands and secondary conservation lands does not in any way detract from the importance of HCVs in which some forest management activities may still occur.

-
- 6.5.1 For forests managed on public lands, an efficient process is used to engage Indigenous Peoples whose traditional territory overlaps the Management Unit and self-identified interested and affected stakeholders, regarding the identification and management of *designated conservation lands**.

The process includes the development of a mechanism to achieve *consensus** on the identified *designated conservation lands**.

INTENT BOX

This Indicator requires that an engagement process be undertaken with self-identified stakeholders. Self-identified stakeholders are stakeholders with a history of FSC involvement and/or interest in conservation and who express an interest in participating when informed of the opportunity to be involved. There is no requirement for The Organization to engage stakeholders who do not express an interest.

Dealing with many individuals and/or groups with overlapping interests can lead to an unwieldy process and slow progress. It is reasonable that The Organization, in collaboration with the stakeholders and affected Indigenous Peoples, develop a process for efficient cooperation that may involve delegation of representation across groups that share common interests. Delegation requires the support of stakeholders and affected Indigenous Peoples.

⁴HCV Resource Network. 2013. Common Guidance for the Identification of High Conservation Values. Proforest and the High Conservation Values Network. 63 p.

- 6.5.2 Using *best available information**, an analysis is used to identify potential gaps in the completeness of the *Conservation Areas Network** in the Management Unit. Elements considered for inclusion in the gap analysis address *enduring features**, representation of native ecosystems, landscape *connectivity**, High Conservation Values and High Conservation Value areas.

The analysis uses inputs from the entire *area of ecological influence**.

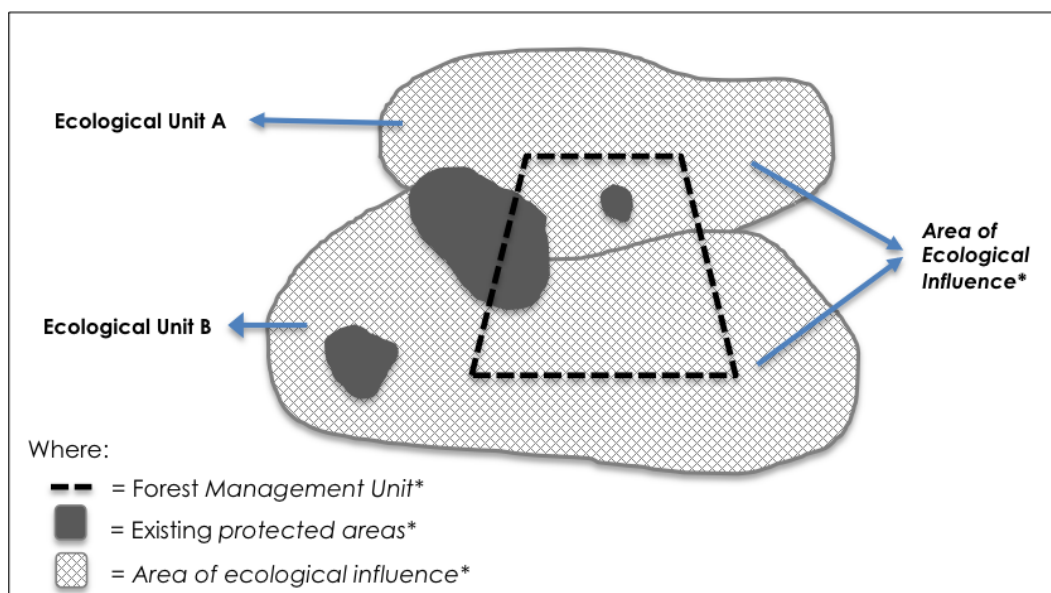
The results of the gap analysis are mapped.

INTENT BOX

Area of Ecological Influence*

The *area of ecological influence** (AEI) includes the entire area encompassed by ecological units (e.g. *ecodistricts**, biogeoclimatic zones) that occur at least partly within the Management Unit. The intent of using an area that extends beyond the Management Unit in the gap analysis is to incorporate a broader landscape perspective into consideration of the *Conservation Areas Network**. An analysis that takes account of a broad landscape (i.e. including the *area of ecological influence**) is better suited to providing an accurate assessment of conservation gaps. There may be circumstances in which there is little *protected area** encompassed by the Management Unit, but considerably more in the *area of ecological influence**. In such a circumstance, there may be fewer gaps than would be identified if only lands encompassed by Management Unit were used in the analysis.

In the figure below, the Management Unit overlaps two ecological units, so the *area of ecological influence** includes the total areas encompassed by both ecological units. To provide the most useful gap analysis, data from the entire *area of ecological influence** should be used. However, depending on the size of the *area of ecological influence**, and the availability of data formatted to facilitate efficient analysis, the level of effort required to incorporate all elements identified in the Indicator that occur outside the Management Unit may be unrealistic. A reasonable starting point for the analysis would consider information on the size and location of *protected areas** from outside the Management Unit.



- 6.5.3 A *peer review** of the gap analysis is completed by one or more *independent experts**.
- 6.5.4 For forests managed on public land, the gap analysis and *peer review** are made publicly available, including in electronic format.
- 6.5.5 Areas that address *Conservation Areas Network** gaps are identified as *designated conservation lands** or *secondary conservation lands**.

INTENT BOX

As noted previously, designated conservation lands may occur on both private and public forests, whereas secondary conservation lands may occur only on private forests.

- 6.5.6 *Designated conservation lands** and *secondary conservation lands** are of sufficient size to ensure the values they are intended to address are effectively protected based on a precautionary approach.
- 6.5.7 The *Conservation Areas Network** comprises a minimum of 10% of the area of the Management Unit. The extent of the *Conservation Areas Network** on the Management Unit is identified by considering:
- 1) Relative extent of the *Conservation Areas Network** in the *area of ecological influence**;
 - 2) Contribution of the *Conservation Areas Network** to the attainment of regional provincial, national and international (e.g. Aichi biodiversity targets) conservation and *protected area** targets;
 - 3) Best available scientific information and research regarding appropriate conservation targets;
 - 4) Previous contributions of The Organization to *Conservation Areas Network** on lands that were formerly within the Management Unit; and
 - 5) Socio-economic considerations (e.g. implications for wood availability and harvest levels).

Evidence is provided to validate any claim of the existence of *protected areas** that were formerly within the Management Unit.

INTENT BOX

As described earlier, on public forests, the Conservation Areas Network is the sum of protected areas and designated conservation lands, whereas on private forests, it also includes secondary conservation lands. This Indicator requires that the Conservation Areas Network must comprise a minimum of 10% of the area of the Management Unit. However, 10% should not be also interpreted as a maximum or desirable level in all circumstances. There may be instances in which a more extensive Conservation Areas Network is warranted based on the factors considered in the gap analysis (Indicator 6.5.2), and the distribution of protected areas and other ecologically and culturally important lands within the area of ecological influence. Provided that at least the 10% threshold is reached, the overall size should reflect a balance of the points listed in this Indicator.

- 6.5.8 For forests managed on public land, *consensus** is achieved on the identification of *designated conservation lands** through implementation of the process identified in Indicator 6.5.1.

INTENT BOX

Indicator 6.5.8 builds upon the process identified in Indicator 6.5.1. Indicator 6.5.1 requires engagement with Indigenous Peoples and stakeholders to build a process to achieve consensus. It is expected that the process developed to achieve consensus includes the participation of The Organization, and that the interests of The Organization be among those considered in the achievement of consensus.

Consensus should be the result of a process seeking to take into account the views of The Organization, Indigenous Peoples, and stakeholders, and to reconcile any conflicting arguments. It need not imply unanimity.

- 6.5.9 Forest operations including harvesting, silviculture, and *road** building, are not undertaken by The Organization within *designated conservation lands** except when confirmed by *independent expert** opinion as appropriate to achieve objectives associated with *restoration** or maintenance of natural conditions.

INTENT BOX

Most organizations operating on public land can only control management activities within their allocated rights as tenure holders, and so this Indicator refers specifically to “Forest operations...undertaken by The Organization”, recognizing that other industrial operations may have overlapping tenure rights. Indicator 6.5.11 addresses obligations of The Organization related to its sphere of influence.

In rare cases, road building may be necessary to conduct management operations in areas beyond designated conservation lands. Such road building and maintenance within a designated conservation land should only be undertaken when use or creation of existing or alternate access would be extremely difficult and result in more ecological damage than alternatives.

- 6.5.10 For forests managed on private land, forest operations are undertaken on *secondary conservation lands** only when they maintain the ecological and cultural qualities that are the basis of the lands’ designation.
- 6.5.11 For forests managed on public land, The Organization works within its *sphere of influence** to achieve the following:
- 1) Move *designated conservation lands** to full legal regulated status;
 - 2) Recognition of *designated conservation lands** in management plans and other relevant documents; and
 - 3) Avoid harvesting, *road** building and other operations proposed by other tenure holders that are not consistent with conservation objectives of *designated conservation lands**.

Free, Prior and Informed Consent is obtained prior to efforts to work within The Organization’s *sphere of influence** to achieve regulated status for *designated conservation lands** that overlap Indigenous Peoples’ traditional territories (per Criterion 3.2).

INTENT BOX

Sphere of Influence and FPIC

This Indicator recognizes that Free, Prior, and Informed Consent of Indigenous Peoples is necessary before attempts should be made to move designated conservation lands on traditional territories to legally protected status. The Organization is expected to inquire with Indigenous Peoples regarding their interest in seeking legal protection for lands in their traditional territories. Where FPIC is not obtained, the lands are expected to remain as designated conservation lands, but efforts on the part of The Organization to obtain legally protected status do not proceed. Requirements 2 and 3 in the above Indicator are to be addressed regardless of the attainment of FPIC, as these requirements do not relate to the attainment of legally protected status.

After Designated Conservation Lands have been moved to legislated status

When an area of designated conservation lands is moved to regulated protected status through collaborative efforts with the regional, provincial or federal government, new designated conservation lands need not be identified to replace the ones that have been granted regulated status, although the objectives associated with achieving the total area of the conservation areas network, as identified in Indicator 6.5.7, would remain in place. The success of moving designated conservation lands to regulated status should be noted by the auditors along with the gap that it addressed so that in future gap analyses, assessments and audits, The Organization will not need to 'replace' the formally protected designated conservation lands with new ones.

- 6.5.12 The completed gap analysis is reviewed at least every five years, and updated if necessary, based on availability of new information or advances in gap analysis methodology.

If substantial changes to the gap analysis occur as a result of the update, a *peer review** is undertaken.

INTENT BOX

This Indicator requires that the gap analysis be reviewed at least every five years. This does not necessarily mean that the gap analysis will need to be redone at that interval. As the Indicator requires, the analysis will only need to be redone or updated if relevant new information or an improved methodology becomes available.

For example, new information that may necessitate updating the gap analysis could include the creation of new protected areas that address some of the previously identified gaps, or an improved landscape classification system that provides an improved basis for identifying gaps. The bar for deciding whether there is a sufficient basis for proceeding with an update should be neither too high nor too low. The expectation is that updates only are considered if it is likely that the new analysis will identify meaningfully different gaps from those identified in the previous analysis.

6.6 The Organization* shall effectively maintain the continued existence of naturally occurring native species* and genotypes*, and prevent losses of biological diversity*, especially through habitat* management in the Management Unit*. The Organization* shall demonstrate that effective measures are in place to manage and control hunting, fishing, trapping and collecting. (C6.2 and C6.3 P&C V4)

6.6.1 For all *harvest areas** including those on which salvage operations following natural disturbances are to be undertaken, *best available information** is used to identify targets for the post-harvest forest composition for:

- 1) Density and spatial distribution of residual (live and dead) trees and patches within *harvest areas**;
- 2) Size distribution of live and dead trees;
- 3) Size distribution of patches;
- 4) Residual species composition; and
- 5) Management of coarse woody debris.

Targets are appropriate for the *silvicultural systems** (e.g. clear-cut, selection, shelterwood) in use.

Targets are set taking concerns for worker safety into account.

INTENT BOX

In some circumstances, it may not be possible or practical to set quantitative targets. For example, it may be too difficult to measure coarse woody debris, and there may be uncertainty about appropriate amounts to maintain. Nonetheless, it is known that woody debris plays an important ecological role, and so targets may include the way management practices will address maintenance on the site, such as minimizing the crushing of large downed logs, leaving of unmerchantable portions of logs at the stump, etc. In other cases, practical considerations may constrain the ability of The Organization to set targets; for example, where deciduous trees are harvested in the winter it may not be possible to set specific targets for retention of dead trees. Assessment of conformance with this Indicator should take considerations such as these into account.

6.6.2 *Management activities** are implemented to achieve the targets identified in Indicator 6.6.1.

6.6.3 *Management activities** maintain regionally uncommon *stand**- and site-scale ecological elements and important habitat features, including:

- 1) *Ancient forest** patches;
- 2) Rare sites and plant communities as defined by ecological classification systems;
- 3) Vernal pools;
- 4) Small wetlands;
- 5) Den sites;
- 6) Nest sites for birds of prey;
- 7) Ungulate calving sites/areas;
- 8) Spawning sites for fish;
- 9) Important bird migration sites;

- 10) Super-canopy trees;
- 11) Wallows; and
- 12) Mineral licks.

INTENT BOX

Best available information should be used to identify stand- and site-scale environmental values as required in Indicator 6.1.2. Although some habitat features may not be identified before the start of operations, it is still necessary to address the requirements of this Indicator to maintain those values. Management activities can maintain these values by, for example, ensuring that operational staff have adequate tools and training to recognize the values and implement appropriate protective measures. However, it is recognized that the season during which the operation takes place can make it difficult or impossible to identify some values (e.g. it would likely not be possible to identify den sites, very small wetlands or wallows during winter operations).

- 6.6.4 *Best efforts** are made to maintain habitat features and increase the quality and quantity of habitat features, including those identified in Indicator 6.6.3, that have suffered *long-term** degradation due to *forest management activities**.

INTENT BOX

In the context of this Indicator, degradation does not simply mean a decline in short-term abundance, but is a more serious condition in which the state of a habitat feature does not provide the ecological value it normally does in the forest. It would be difficult or impractical to attempt to improve the quality or quantity of some habitat features, such as wallows, for example, that may have declined. It is possible, however, to enhance or restore others, such as spawning beds for fish that have been affected by erosion caused by forest management activities, for example. Implementation and auditing of this Indicator will require good judgement, focusing on practical efforts that are likely to produce tangible results.

- 6.6.5 The Organization works within the scope of its authority and within its *sphere of influence** to implement sustainable management related to hunting, fishing, and trapping, and collecting activities for which there are known concerns.

INTENT BOX

This Indicator is similar to Indicator 6.4.7 in the manner in which it requires The Organization to work within the scope of their authority and within their sphere of influence. Refer to the Intent Box for that Indicator for discussion on these topics.

- 6.7 *The Organization** shall protect or restore* natural watercourses, water bodies*, riparian zones* and their connectivity*. The Organization* shall avoid negative impacts on water quality and quantity and mitigate and remedy those that occur. (C6.5 and 10.2 P&C V4)**

- 6.7.1 *Best management practices** are in place that identify measures to protect water bodies, riparian zones, and water quality. At a minimum, the measures address the following:
- 1) Buffer widths sufficient to protect water quality, aquatic and emergent vegetation and habitat for fish, invertebrates, other aquatic species, and terrestrial species;
 - 2) Machine-free zones that are not entered except where required for construction of crossings or other approved infrastructure or *restoration** of riparian functions or water bodies;
 - 3) Restriction of in-stream activities to avoid sensitive fisheries seasons;

- 4) Prevention of negative changes in water quantity and quality including through maintaining stream shading sufficient to protect against deleterious changes in stream temperature;
- 5) Minimizing disruption of natural drainage patterns, including when locating and constructing *roads**, landings and skidways;
- 6) Prevention of sedimentation of water bodies; and
- 7) Protection of *intermittent streams** and *ephemeral streams**.

INTENT BOX

Intermittent and ephemeral streams can be important aquatic features, providing habitat and hydrologic function. This Indicator requires that these streams be protected during forest management activities. In many circumstances, it is not reasonable to expect that intermittent and ephemeral streams will be mapped as they are not apparent at all times of the year and are frequently hidden by forest canopy. Nonetheless, protection of these water bodies is possible and could be demonstrated through the provision of training and instructions to workers so that appropriate steps can be taken when streams are encountered during operations.

Indicators in Principle 10 address the need to protect water bodies from chemicals and fertilizers.

- 6.7.2 The *best management practices** identified in Indicator 6.7.1 are being implemented.
- 6.7.3 *Restoration** activities are implemented for watercourses, water bodies, riparian zones and their *connectivity**, water quantity and water quality:
 - 1) Where protection measures implemented by The Organization fail to protect environmental values from impacts of *forest management activities**; and/or
 - 2) When damage has been caused to these environmental values by past activities of The Organization or previous forest managers.

INTENT BOX

The Organization is encouraged to identify appropriate benchmarks for defining when restoration activities are necessary. These benchmarks could address the gravity of existing or likely environmental degradation, impacts on affected stakeholders, impacts on forest operations, safety of all users and cost.

Instances in which previous measures to protect water quality or aquatic systems are not up to contemporary standards, but are effective nonetheless, the most prudent course of management action may be to leave the existing measures, such as box culverts, in place. In some instances, attempts to fix antiquated measures may result in more damage than simply leaving the measure in place. The Organization is expected to use best judgement in these circumstances and be able to validate their course of action based on experience and/or best management practices.

- 6.7.4 Where *management activities** that are not within its direct control have the potential to significantly affect water bodies and/or riparian zones, The Organization works within its *sphere of influence** to attempt to prevent degradation, implement protective measures and remedy instances in which past measures are no longer effective.
- 6.7.5 *Best management practices** are in place that identify measures to control changes in flow in *watersheds** with significant downstream values resulting from *management activities**. Appropriate to the scale, intensity and risk of operations the measures include:
 - 1) Employing analytical approaches to identify and avoid hydrological impacts associated with decreased or increased flows caused by *forest management activities**;

- 2) Management of *cutblock** and *harvest area** sizes, elevation and aspect;
- 3) Avoiding subsurface and surface drainage interception and/or diversion by *roads** and trails;
- 4) Planning and implementing harvesting to minimize *road** density; and
- 5) Prompt *road** reclamation and reforestation of logged sites.

INTENT BOX

Potential impacts of forestry on peak flow are greatest in areas with moderate to steep topography. In Canada, such areas occur primarily in British Columbia and western Alberta, but occur in other parts of the country too. The need to address this Indicator is based on scale, intensity and risk, so consideration of topography will influence the extent to which The Organization is expected to implement the requirements of this Indicator.

This Indicator requires that analytical approaches be used to identify and avoid hydrological impacts associated with increased flows, but does not specify which approaches are to be used as regional differences in regulatory, environment, topography and downstream values may play a role in deciding which approaches are most appropriate.

6.7.6 The *best management practices** identified in Indicator 6.7.5 are being effectively implemented.

6.8 The Organization* shall manage the *landscape in the *Management Unit** to maintain and/or restore* a varying mosaic of species, sizes, ages, spatial scales* and regeneration cycles appropriate for the *landscape** values in that region, and for enhancing environmental and economic resilience*. (C10.2 and 10.3 P&C V4)**

6.8.1 Based on the analyses undertaken for Indicators 6.1.3 and 6.1.4, targets are identified for the distribution of *forest types** and age classes of *forest types** that are intended to maintain, *restore**, or enhance the condition of the forest appropriate to the regional context.

Targets may take anticipated impacts of climate change into account provided they are based on *best available information**.

Target *age-class** distributions represent the full range of natural forest ages such that *old forest** classes are incorporated into the targets.

INTENT BOX

The Organization should identify targets that require them to make diligent efforts to achieve progressive outcomes related to forest structure and composition that take the regional context into account. In regions with a long history of settlement and land conversion, where the forest has been significantly altered from a pre-industrial condition, an appropriate target may include the maintenance of natural forests. In forests that have not been significantly altered, appropriate targets may take into account opportunities to return the forest to a more natural condition. Such targets may be based on the use of the interquartile range where a RONV analysis has been used in Indicator 6.1.4.

As identified in the Intent Box for Indicator 6.1.4, there may be circumstances in which it is appropriate to use a blended approach of range of natural variation and pre-industrial condition to set targets for the future forest condition. In these circumstances The Organization is expected to implement the requirements of this Indicator for those portions of the forest that are most well-suited for each approach.

6.8.2 Measures are being implemented to achieve the targets for distributions of *forest types** and age classes of *forest types** identified in Indicator 6.8.1.

6.8.3 Based on the analyses undertaken for Indicators 6.1.3 and 6.1.4, targets are identified for the size distribution of forest patches to maintain, *restore**, or enhance the condition of the forest as appropriate to the regional context.

The targets also take into account the needs of *species at risk** that require large areas of contiguous habitat.

INTENT BOX

As for Indicator 6.8.1, The Organization should identify targets that require them to make diligent efforts to achieve progressive outcomes related to forest structure and composition, and take the regional context into account. Considerations should include the extent to which the size distribution of forest patches of the present forest differs from pre-industrial conditions. Pre-industrial and natural conditions may not be appropriate targets given that large disturbances may not be socially acceptable.

6.8.4 Measures are being implemented to achieve the targets for forest patch sizes, identified in Indicator 6.8.3.

These include:

- 1) Maintain contiguous blocks of forest that are of natural-disturbance origin;
- 2) Aggregate existing and planned disturbances as a means of creating and maintaining large contiguous blocks; and
- 3) Minimize the extent of *roads** and other linear disturbances in the contiguous blocks, including through removal and reclamation.

INTENT BOX

This Indicator involves efforts to maintain contiguous blocks of forest that are of natural disturbance origin, while implementing measures to achieve the targets identified in Indicator 6.8.3. This requirement is not intended to be additive to those expressed in other Indicators that may also deal with large blocks of forest, such as Indicator 6.4.5 (caribou), or the requirements of HCV Categories 2 and 3 (addressed in Principle 9) that address landscape-level ecosystems and large remnant ecosystem patches. In other words, if the maintenance of contiguous areas of forest of natural-disturbance origin is addressed elsewhere, additional efforts should not be required to address the requirements of this Indicator.

The Indicator's requirement for maintenance of contiguous blocks of forest that are of natural-disturbance origin should take forest type and management history into account. Some forest areas may have a long history of management involving frequent stand entries and are generally not susceptible to large natural disturbances. In such cases, there should be moderated expectations of the extent to which this requirement can be addressed in forests with a long history of management and limited natural disturbance.

- 6.8.5 In a manner consistent with the ecology of the *ecoregion** and *forest types** being managed, *management activities** show consideration for maintenance and *restoration** of *connectivity** in the forest landscape.

*Connectivity** planning considers the natural mosaic of *forest types** and disturbance patterns, as well as managing *roads**, linear disturbances, culverts and other crossings of wetlands and water bodies, and other barriers that affect *connectivity**.

- 6.8.6 Appropriate to the scale, intensity and risk of operations, access management is being implemented for *roads** developed for forest management that:

- 1) Addresses use management strategies (including *deactivation** and/or *abandonment** and maintenance) for all grades of *road** under the management of The Organization or in collaboration with other authorities;
- 2) Considers intactness in areas with sensitive biological values and where remoteness is a key tourism value;
- 3) Implements access development, use, and *road** reclamation in contiguous blocks as identified in Indicator 6.8.4, while considering the needs of *species at risk** and access-sensitive species;
- 4) Identifies and attempts to maintain a fair and equitable balance between the ecological value of intactness and social and economic values associated with maintenance of access; and
- 5) Is consistent with or exceeds requirements of approved government/land management plans.

Where access and/or other linear disturbances are being constructed or used by other tenure holders or other land users, The Organization works within its *sphere of influence** to address the components of this Indicator and encourage others to address the components of the Indicator.

INTENT BOX

This Indicator requires use management strategies to address deactivation and/or abandonment and maintenance for all grades of roads. There may be circumstances in which neither deactivation nor abandonment is appropriate, such as when a road has customary or legal use by a community or is required by other resources users. In such cases, it would be reasonable that the management plan indicates the rationale and plans for ongoing use.

This Indicator refers to road reclamation in contiguous blocks, linking the requirements of this Indicator to those of Indicators 6.8.3 and 6.8.4. Reclamation can be either passive, through restriction of access, including removal of water crossings, or active, through practices such as planting or otherwise facilitating regeneration on road surfaces. Decisions regarding appropriate practices used should take into consideration the likely success of the practices in returning roads to forested conditions as promptly as is practical.

Refer to Indicator 6.5.9 for consideration of road building in designated conservation lands.

6.8.7 The Organization works within its *sphere of influence**, with managers, agencies and Indigenous Peoples responsible for managing lands adjacent to the forest to coordinate approaches to landscape-level management, including:

- 1) Management to facilitate landscape-scale *connectivity**;
- 2) Management to minimize *cumulative disturbances**; and
- 3) Maintenance and/or *restoration** of large contiguous areas.

6.9 The Organization* shall not convert natural forest* or High Conservation* Value Areas to plantations*, or to non-forest* land use nor transform plantations* on sites directly converted from natural forest* to non-forest* land use, except when the conversion:

- a) Affects a *very limited portion** of the *Management Unit**, and**
- b) Will produce clear, substantial, additional, secure, *long-term** conservation and social benefits in the *Management Unit**, and**
- c) Does not damage or threaten High Conservation* Values, nor any sites or resources necessary to maintain or enhance those High Conservation* Values. (C6.10 P&C V4 and Motion 2014#7)**

INTENT BOX

Refer to the Glossary to understand how the word plantation is used in this Standard.

This Criterion applies to current and future or planned conversion. Past conversion is covered in Criterion 6.10.

If the plantation site was a natural forest immediately prior to being converted to a plantation, then it may not be converted to non-forest uses. However, if the plantation site was non-forest immediately prior to being converted to a plantation, then it may be converted back to non-forest uses.

The construction of forest roads, other essential infrastructure for forest management activities and essential public utilities, such as powerlines, pipelines and railways, are not considered to be conversion processes.

In this Criterion, forest is also meant to be natural forest, such as a wooded ecosystem or savannah, for example. As such, non-forest uses or non-forest land uses are not constrained by the meaning of forest as simply a “tract of land dominated by trees”.

6.9.1 There is no conversion of natural forest or High Conservation Value Areas to plantations, or to non-forest land-use, nor transformation of plantations on sites directly converted from natural forest to non-forest land-use, except when it:

- 1) Affects a *very limited portion** of the Management Unit, and
- 2) Will produce clear, substantial, additional, secure, *long-term** conservation and social benefits in the Management Unit, and
- 3) Does not damage or threaten High Conservation Values, nor any sites or resources necessary to maintain or enhance those High Conservation Values.

6.10 *Management Units containing *plantations** that were established on areas converted from natural *forest** between 1 December 1994 and 31 December 2020 shall not qualify for certification, except where:**

- a) The conversion affected a *very limited portion** of the *Management Unit** and is producing clear, substantial, additional, secure *long-term** *conservation** benefits in the *Management Unit**, or**
- b) *The Organization** which was directly or indirectly involved in the conversion demonstrates restitution of all social harms and proportionate remedy of environmental harms as specified in the applicable FSC Remedy Framework, or**
- c) *The Organization** which was not involved in the conversion but has acquired *Management Units** where conversion has taken place demonstrates restitution of priority social harms and partial remedy of environmental harms as specified in the applicable FSC Remedy Framework.**

6.10.1 Based on *best available information**, accurate data is compiled on all conversions between 1 December 1994 and 31 December 2020 within the Management Unit.

6.10.2 Areas converted from natural forest to plantation between 1 December 1994 and 31 December 2020 are not certified, except where:

- 1) The conversion affected a *very limited portion** of the Management Unit and is producing clear, substantial, additional, secure *long-term** conservation benefits in the Management Unit, or
- 2) The Organization which was directly or indirectly involved in the conversion demonstrates restitution of all social harms and proportionate remedy of environmental harms as specified in the applicable FSC Remedy Framework, or
- 3) The Organization which was not involved in conversion but has acquired Management Units where conversion has taken place demonstrates restitution of priority social harms and partial remedy of environmental harms as specified in the applicable FSC Remedy Framework, or
- 4) The Organization qualifies as a small-scale smallholder.

6.11 *Management Units shall not qualify for certification if they contain *natural forests** or High *Conservation** Value Areas converted after 31 December 2020, except where the conversion:**

- a) Affected a *very limited portion** of the *Management Unit**, and**
- b) Is producing clear, substantial, additional, secure *long-term** *conservation** and social benefits in the *Management Unit**, and**
- c) Did not threaten High *Conservation** Values, nor any sites or resources necessary to maintain or enhance those High *Conservation** Values.**

6.11.1 Based on *best available information**, accurate data is compiled on all conversions of natural forests and High Conservation Value Areas after 31 December 2020 within the Management Unit.

6.11.2 Areas where natural forests or High Conservation Value Areas have been converted after 31 December 2020 are not certified, except where the conversion:

- 1) Affected a *very limited portion** of the Management Unit, and
- 2) is producing clear, substantial, additional, secure *long-term** conservation and social benefits in the Management Unit, and
- 3) did not threaten High Conservation Values, nor any sites or resources necessary to maintain or enhance those High Conservation Values.

PRINCIPLE* 7: MANAGEMENT PLANNING

The Organization* shall have a **management plan*** consistent with its policies and **objectives*** and proportionate to **scale, intensity and risks*** of its **management activities***. The **management plan*** shall be implemented and kept up-to-date based on monitoring information in order to promote **adaptive management***. The associated planning and procedural documentation shall be sufficient to guide staff, inform **affected stakeholders*** and **interested stakeholders*** and to justify management decisions. (P7 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

Management plan refers to the collection of documents, reports, records and maps that justify and regulate activities carried out on the Management Unit. Management plan documentation can build from existing planning processes, and is not solely confined to provincially regulated or required documents. Refer to the Glossary for the full definition of management plan.

7.1 The Organization* shall, proportionate to **scale***, **intensity*** and **risk*** of its **management activities***, set policies (visions and values) and **objectives*** for management, which are environmentally sound, socially beneficial and economically viable. Summaries of these policies and **objectives*** shall be incorporated into the **management plan***, and publicized. (C7.1a P&C V4)

- 7.1.1 Vision, values and strategic objectives that support the management plan are aligned with the requirements of this Standard.
- 7.1.2 Operational management objectives that address the requirements of this Standard are described in the management plan.

INTENT BOX

For this Criterion, values refer to the long-term values of The Organization regarding conformance with the FSC Principles and Criteria, at a minimum.

7.2 The Organization* shall have and implement a **management plan*** for the **Management Unit*** which is fully consistent with the policies and **management objectives*** as established according to Criterion 7.1. The **management plan*** shall describe the natural resources that exist in the **Management Unit*** and explain how the plan will meet the FSC certification requirements. The **management plan*** shall cover **forest management planning*** and **social management planning*** proportionate to **scale***, **intensity*** and **risk*** of the planned activities. (C7.1 P&C V4)

- 7.2.1 The management plan includes management actions, procedures, strategies and other measures to achieve the management objectives.
- 7.2.2 The management plan includes the legal provincial forest management planning requirements and addresses the following elements:
 - 1) Management objectives;
 - 2) Description of the forest resources to be managed, environmental limitations, land use and ownership status, socio-economic conditions and profile of adjacent lands;
 - 3) Results of assessments and monitoring programs;

- 4) Planned *management activities** and *silvicultural systems** used, based on the ecology of the forest and its social context;
- 5) Rationale for timber harvesting levels and species selection;
- 6) Measures to prevent and mitigate negative impacts of *management activities**;
- 7) Measures to conserve and/or *restore** values identified throughout the other Principles of the Standard;
- 8) Maps describing the forest resources, key infrastructure, land use and management designations (including HCVs), and planned *management activities**.

INTENT BOX

The information required for adjacent lands primarily refers to shared values, resources, and services. It may not be possible in all circumstances to provide a profile of adjacent lands. The expectation is that information regarding adjacent lands will be provided only in cases where the information is publicly available, such as within a forest management plan on a neighbouring Crown land Management Unit.

7.3 **The *management plan** shall include *verifiable targets** by which progress towards each of the prescribed *management objectives** can be assessed.**

- 7.3.1 Verifiable targets and the frequency at which they are assessed, are established to ensure progress towards each management objective, and are used as the basis for monitoring, as described in Principle 8. Targets are measurable (where possible), address short-term and *long-term** time frames (as applicable), and each is supported by a rationale, including underlying assumptions.

INTENT BOX

Examples of verifiable targets:

- The terms and conditions of the binding FPIC agreement are met;
- Rutting does not exceed 5% of the harvest area per year;
- Road density target of 1.5 km primary and branch road per square km is met;
- The cumulative disturbance is less than 35% within the caribou range portion of Management Unit.

7.4 **The *Organization** shall update and revise periodically the *management planning** and procedural documentation to incorporate the results of monitoring and evaluation, *stakeholder** *engagement** or new scientific and technical information, as well as to respond to changing environmental, social and economic circumstances. (C7.2 P&C V4)**

- 7.4.1 The management plan is revised and updated periodically to consider:
- 1) Monitoring and evaluation results, including results of audits;
 - 2) Stakeholder *engagement** results;
 - 3) New scientific and technical information; and
 - 4) Changing environmental, social, or economic circumstances.

- 7.5** ***The Organization** shall make *publicly available** a summary of the *management plan** free of charge. Excluding *confidential information**, other relevant components of the *management plan** shall be made available to *affected stakeholders** on request, and at cost of reproduction and handling. (C7.4 P&C V4)**

INTENT BOX

Examples of confidential information include data and content:

- Related to investment decisions;
- About intellectual property rights;
- Which is client confidential;
- Which is, by law, confidential;
- Whose dissemination could put at risk the protection of wildlife species and habitats;
- About sites that are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance to Indigenous Peoples (see Criterion 3.5), as requested.

- 7.5.1 A summary of the management plan in a format comprehensible to stakeholders, including policies and management objectives (defined in Criterion 7.1), maps and excluding confidential information, is made publicly available at no cost.

INTENT BOX

At the discretion of The Organization, the entire management plan can be provided, if this reduces the administrative burden.

- 7.5.2 Relevant components of the management plan, excluding confidential information, are provided upon request, at cost for production and handling.

- 7.6** ***The Organization** shall, proportionate to *scale**, *intensity** and *risk** of *management activities**, proactively and transparently engage *affected stakeholders** in its *management planning** and monitoring processes, and shall engage *interested stakeholders** on request. (C4.4 P&C V4)**

INTENT BOX

Culturally appropriate engagement is described in Annex F.

Refer to Annex E for details describing how disputes are addressed throughout the Standard.

- 7.6.1 Affected stakeholders are provided with an opportunity for culturally appropriate *engagement** in planning processes and monitoring programs of *management activities** in which they are affected.
- 7.6.2 Upon request, interested stakeholders are provided with an opportunity for *engagement** in planning processes and monitoring programs of *management activities** that affect their interests.
- 7.6.3 A system is in place whereby *complaints** can be made known to The Organization related to impact of *forest management activities** on affected stakeholders, other than the ones concerned in Criterion 4.6.

- 7.6.4 A publicly available *dispute** resolution process that can be adapted through culturally appropriate *engagement** is in place.
- 7.6.5 *Complaints** are responded to in a timely manner. *Complaints** that are not resolved are elevated to *disputes** and are being addressed via a *dispute** resolution process.
- 7.6.6 An up-to-date record of *complaints** and *disputes** is maintained, and includes:
- 1) Steps taken to resolve *complaints** and *disputes**;
 - 2) Outcomes of all *complaints** and *dispute** resolution processes, including, where applicable, *fair compensation** for loss or damage to property; and
 - 3) Unresolved *disputes**, the reasons they are not resolved, and how they will be resolved.

PRINCIPLE* 8: MONITORING AND ASSESSMENT

The Organization* shall demonstrate that, progress towards achieving the *management objectives**, the impacts of *management activities** and the condition of the *Management Unit**, are monitored and evaluated proportionate to the *scale, intensity and risk** of *management activities**, in order to implement *adaptive management**. (P8 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

The main objective of monitoring is to allow The Organization to implement adaptive management. This objective also determines the intensity, frequency, scheme, schedules and procedures for monitoring. There is flexibility regarding all these factors, as long as the monitoring enables adaptive management. Monitoring should be consistent and replicable over time, suitable for quantifying significant social, economic and environmental changes over time, and suitable for identifying risks and unacceptable impacts.

The overall setup of the monitoring system also depends on the scale, intensity and risk of management activities. Some monitoring variables deal with issues with high levels of risk. Examples include variables for which there is a high risk of not achieving targets, or management activities that could cause negative social, economic or environmental impacts. Risk is also high when knowledge of the likelihood of negative impacts is weak. Such variables need to receive priority in monitoring systems.

- Criterion 8.1 addresses requirements to monitor the implementation of the management plan.
- Criterion 8.2 addresses requirements to monitor and evaluate the significant environmental (8.2.1) and social and economic (8.2.2) impacts of management activities, as well as changes in the environmental condition (8.2.3) of the Management Unit.
- Criterion 8.3 deals with the analysis of the results of monitoring and evaluation for feedback into the periodic revision of the management plan, as required by Criterion 7.4. The objective is to ensure lesson-learning and continuous improvement in the quality of management, consistent with the adaptive management approach described in Principle 7. Monitoring results should be used in decision-making at an early stage in the planning process for the next management plan.

In all provinces, some aspects of forest monitoring are the responsibility of the provincial government. Some of the monitoring responsibilities identified in this Principle may be carried out by provincial governments through existing programs. It is not the intent of this Principle that The Organization should duplicate established regulatory monitoring practices. Even though the wording used to articulate the Indicators in Criterion 8.2 is directed toward The Organization, The Organization may rely on other agencies where those agencies have responsibility for relevant monitoring. Furthermore, it is recognized that provincial governments and forest stakeholders can influence or constrain The Organization's ability to independently meet FSC monitoring requirements. It is intended that there is cooperation between agencies so that The Organization can demonstrate progress in achieving management plan objectives through sufficient forest monitoring.

Principle 7 requires forest management to adhere to the principles of adaptive management. An important component of adaptive management is the monitoring regime. The concept of adaptive management is carried forward to this Principle and the monitoring should be designed to explicitly evaluate the effect of management on resources and values.

8.1 **The Organization*** shall monitor the implementation of its *management plan**, including its policies and *management objectives**, its progress with the activities planned, and the achievement of its *verifiable targets**.

- 8.1.1 A monitoring plan is documented and implemented in order to monitor the implementation of the management plan, including its policies, management objectives and achievement of verifiable targets.

8.2 The Organization* shall monitor and evaluate the environmental and social impacts of the activities carried out in the Management Unit*, and changes in its environmental condition. (C8.2 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

The monitoring program to evaluate environmental, social and economic impacts of management activities and the changes in environmental condition should be designed in a way to focus on the identification of significant and adverse impacts, and consider the cost of implementing monitoring initiatives, as well as a reasonable timeframe by which changes in conditions can be detected. The information used to fulfill the monitoring requirements can be obtained from various sources, including The Organization.

- 8.2.1 Monitoring is sufficient to identify significant environmental impacts of *management activities**, including (where applicable):
- 1) Poor regeneration (Criteria 10.1 and 10.5);
 - 2) Invasiveness or other adverse impacts associated with alien species (Criterion 10.3);
 - 3) Adverse effects of fertilizers (Criterion 10.6);
 - 4) Adverse effects of *pesticides** (Criterion 10.7);
 - 5) Adverse effects of biological control agents (Criterion 10.8);
 - 6) Physical damage to soil, loss of soil nutrient and loss of *productive forest** area (Criterion 6.3);
 - 7) Adverse effects of increased access (Indicator 6.8.4);
 - 8) Site level damage of harvesting and extraction on residual trees and on environmental values (Criterion 10.11);
 - 9) Damage caused by inappropriate storage or disposal of waste materials (Criterion 10.12).
- 8.2.2. A system is in place to monitor the social and economic aspects of *management activities**, including (where applicable):
- 1) Illegal or unauthorized activities identified by The Organization (Criterion 1.4);
 - 2) Resolution of *disputes** (Criteria 1.6, 2.6, 4.6, 7.6);
 - 3) Sexual harassment and gender discrimination (Criterion 2.2);
 - 4) Occupational health and safety (Criterion 2.3);
 - 5) Timely payment of wages The Organization is responsible for or that is within The Organization's *sphere of influence** (Criterion 2.4);
 - 6) Health of *workers** related to the exposure to *pesticides** or fertilizers (Criterion 2.5 and Indicator 10.7.7);
 - 7) Full implementation of the terms in binding agreements (Criterion 3.3);
 - 8) Protection of sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance to Indigenous Peoples and *local communities** (Criteria 3.5 and 4.7);
 - 9) Actual annual harvests compared to projected annual harvests of timber and non-timber forest products (Criterion 5.2); and
 - 10) Economic viability of The Organization (as required by Indicator 5.5.1).

8.2.3 Systems are in place to obtain up-to-date monitoring information identifying significant changes in environmental conditions caused by *forest management activities**, including (where applicable):

- 1) The maintenance and/or enhancement of ecosystem services (Criterion 5.1) (when The Organization makes FSC promotional claims regarding the provision of ecosystem services, or receives payment for the provision of ecosystem services);
- 2) *Species at risk** and the effectiveness of actions implemented to protect them and their habitats (Criterion 6.4);
- 3) Naturally occurring native species and biological diversity, and the effectiveness of actions implemented to conserve and/or *restore** them (Criterion 6.6);
- 4) Water bodies, riparian zones, water quality and flow in *watersheds**, and the effectiveness of actions implemented to conserve and/or *restore** them (Criterion 6.7);
- 5) *Forest types**, age classes per *forest type** and forest patch sizes, and the effectiveness of actions implemented to maintain and/or *restore** these features (Criterion 6.8); and
- 6) Conversion of natural forest to plantations or conversion to non-forest cover (Criterion 6.9).

8.3 *The Organization shall analyze the results of monitoring and evaluation and feed the outcomes of this analysis back into the planning process. (C8.4 P&C V4)**

8.3.1 The results of monitoring are incorporated into relevant organizational procedures and/or the management plan through periodic updates.

8.3.2 If monitoring results show inconsistencies with the FSC Standard, then management objectives, verifiable targets and/or *management activities** are revised.

8.4 *The Organization shall make *publicly available** a summary of the results of monitoring free of charge, excluding *confidential information**. (C8.5 P&C V4)**

8.4.1 Monitoring results covered in Indicators 8.2.1, 8.2.2 and 8.2.3 are made publicly available at no cost in a format comprehensible to stakeholders and excluding confidential information.

INTENT BOX

At the discretion of The Organization, the entire results, or a summary, of monitoring can be provided if this reduces the administrative burden.

- 8.5 *The Organization** shall have and implement a tracking and tracing system proportionate to the *scale*, intensity* and risk** of its *management activities**, for demonstrating the source and volume in proportion to projected output for each year, of all products from the *Management Unit** that are marketed as FSC certified. (C8.3 P&C V4)**

INTENT BOX

Forest products must be covered by a valid Chain-of-Custody (CoC) or joint Forest Management/ Chain-of-Custody (FM/CoC) certificate to be considered FSC-certified or to carry the FSC logo. The tracking and tracing system referred to in this Criterion is the basis for assessing whether products leaving the Management Unit meet CoC requirements, and can be passed on to the purchaser as FSC-certified material. Therefore, this Criterion only applies to situations where the intent is that the products from the Management Unit are sold or marketed as FSC-certified.

The Criterion requires the demonstration of the source and volume of all products leaving the Management Unit to ensure that any FSC-certified material claimed by the purchaser can be verified as originating from a valid FSC-certified Management Unit. This is needed as one of the checks against 'greenwashing' of uncertified products entering the certified supply chain.

- 8.5.1 A system is implemented to track and trace all products transported from the Management Unit that are marketed as FSC-certified.
- 8.5.2 Information about all timber products that leave the Management Unit, and information about all non-timber forest products sold or delivered by The Organization is compiled and documented, including:
- 1) Species name;
 - 2) Product name or description;
 - 3) Volume (or quantity) of product;
 - 4) Information to trace the material to the point of origin;
 - 5) Logging date, reference date or period;
 - 6) If basic transformation activities take place in the forest, the date and volume produced; and
 - 7) Whether the material was sold or delivered as FSC-certified.

INTENT BOX

For this Indicator, the reference date or period refers to the timeframe by which the timber product was harvested, hauled outside the forest gate, or delivered to the purchaser.

Basic transformation activities do not include tree de-limbing, topping or chipping.

The "forest gate" is considered to be the point of entry to, or exit from, the forest and is defined in the chain of custody documentation or in the forest management plan.

- 8.5.3 Sales invoices and transport documents are kept for a minimum of five years for all FSC-certified products sold or delivered by The Organization.
- A. Sales invoices identify, at a minimum, the following information:
- 1) Name and address of purchaser;
 - 2) The date of sale;
 - 3) Species name;

- 4) Product description;
- 5) The volume (or quantity) sold;
- 6) Certificate code; and
- 7) The FSC Claim “FSC 100%” identifying products sold as FSC-certified.

B. Where sales invoices are not issued, transport documents and/or other documentation related to certified products track, at a minimum, the following information:

- 1) Identification of the destination;
- 2) The date of transport or delivery;
- 3) Species name or group;
- 4) Product description;
- 5) The volume (or quantity) delivered;
- 6) Load or batch reference number; and
- 7) Proof the certified product comes from an FSC-certified forest.

INTENT BOX

On Crown land, wood products harvested are often not sold, but rather, ownership is transferred from the licensee to the purchaser at the forest gate. In this case, 8.5.3.A is not applicable.

PRINCIPLE* 9: HIGH CONSERVATION VALUES*

The Organization* shall maintain and/or enhance the High Conservation Values* in the Management Unit* through applying the precautionary approach*. (P9 P&C V4)

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex D: HCV Framework for direction on appropriate interpretation and implementation of HCV categories.

Common Guidance

HCV assessors, resource managers and auditors should refer to the Common Guidance for the Management and Monitoring of High Conservation Values (Brown and Senior 2014) or relevant reference material provided by FSC for advice regarding implementation of the Indicators addressed in this Principle.

HCVs and HCV Areas

Many Indicators in this Principle refer to both HCVs and HCV areas. There is overlap in the terms, but the distinction between them is important. HCVs are the values themselves as they are identified below; HCV areas are the physical areas that are needed for the existence of identified HCVs. For example, an endangered bog-dwelling orchid may be a HCV, but the bog in which the orchid exists is a HCV area.

Best Available Information and Principle 3

As with other Principles in this Standard, several Indicators in Principle 9 require that best available information be used to provide a baseline for management activities or as a basis for analyses in subsequent Indicators. The Organization is expected to implement these requirements in consideration of a FPIC process, as described in Principle 3 that is inclusive of information sharing related to legal and customary rights as well as site, stand, and landscape values of economic, social, and cultural significance to Indigenous Peoples.

The definition of best available information provides general direction on the type of information to be gathered and the extent of effort required to gather the information. To place appropriate limits on what should be involved in gathering best available information, the definition notes that it should be constrained by reasonable effort and cost. The intent of the term reasonable is to emphasize that limits, such as cost and practicality, exist on the expectations of the effort required to gather information.

Engagement with Indigenous Peoples

As with other Principles in the Standard, several Indicators in Principle 9 require engagement with Indigenous Peoples. The Organization is expected to implement these obligations in a manner consistent with the specific requirements of Indicator 3.1.2.

Maps

Where maps or mapped information is required by this Principle, evidence of digital files, instead of hard-copy maps, is sufficient.

Precautionary Approach

Precautionary Approach is defined in the Glossary. In the context of Principle 9, High Conservation Values are considered to be critical, fundamental, significant or valuable, and therefore any threat to a High Conservation Value is considered to be a threat of severe or irreversible damage.

9.1 *The Organization**, through *engagement** with *affected stakeholders**, *interested stakeholders** and other means and sources, shall assess and record the presence, status and likelihood of occurrence of the following High Conservation* Values in the *Management Unit**, proportionate to the *scale**, *intensity**, and *risk** of impacts of *management activities**:

HCV* 1 – Species diversity. Concentrations of *biological diversity** including *endemic** species, and *rare**, *threatened** or endangered species that are *significant** at global, national or regional levels.

HCV* 2 – Landscape*-level ecosystems* and mosaics. *Intact Forest Landscapes** and large *landscape*-level ecosystems** and *ecosystem** mosaics that are *significant** at global, national or regional levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.

HCV* 3 – Ecosystems* and habitats*. *Rare**, *threatened**, or endangered *ecosystems**, *habitats** or *refugia**.

HCV* 4 – Critical* ecosystem services*. Basic *ecosystem services** in *critical** situations, including *protection** of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.

HCV* 5 – Community needs. Sites and resources fundamental to satisfying the necessities of *local communities** or *Indigenous Peoples** (for livelihood, health, nutrition, water, etc.), identified through *engagement** with these communities or *Indigenous Peoples**.

HCV* 6 – Cultural values. Sites, resources, *habitats** and *landscapes** of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of *critical** cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of *local communities** or *Indigenous Peoples**, identified through *engagement** with these *local communities** or *Indigenous Peoples**. (C9.1 P&C V4 and Motion 2014#7)

INTENT BOX

What is an HCV Assessment?

This Criterion requires the preparation of an HCV assessment. An HCV assessment is a documented description of HCVs that clearly reports on the presence of values, their location (if not confidential), status, and as much as possible, should provide information on habitat and other key resources that support the values. The assessment is a framework document that is to be used to develop management and monitoring strategies to maintain and/or enhance the values.

The HCV Assessment:

- Addresses all six HCV categories;
 - Uses best available information on the status and other attributes of the HCVs;
 - Describes the current condition of the HCVs and whether they are declining, stable or increasing; and
 - Uses results from culturally appropriate engagement with Indigenous Peoples, affected and interested stakeholders with an interest in the conservation and management of HCVs.
-

- 9.1.1 An *HCV assessment** is completed using *best available information** of the status of HCV Categories 1-6 as defined in Criterion 9.1, the HCV areas they rely on, and their condition.

The assessment is completed using the National Framework (Annex D) or another framework that meets the same intent and addresses all HCV categories and values identified in the National Framework.

INTENT BOX

Descriptions of the condition and state of HCVs and HCV areas identified in the HCV assessment report should facilitate monitoring of the results of management efforts. To implement useful effectiveness monitoring, the initial state of the HCVs and HCV areas should be well-articulated and quantitatively defined, where possible.

- 9.1.2 The *HCV assessment** uses results associated with the identification of HCVs and HCV areas from culturally appropriate *engagement** with Indigenous Peoples, and affected and interested stakeholders with an interest in the conservation and management of HCVs and HCV areas. The assessment also uses input from qualified (technical and/or scientific) specialists.

INTENT BOX

The expectation of this Indicator is that engagement with affected and interested stakeholders and Indigenous Peoples addresses all HCV-related topics, for which there is an interest in contributing.

For this Indicator, qualified technical and scientific specialists include individuals with expertise in the topics being addressed, regardless of who they are employed by.

- 9.1.3 All HCVs and HCV areas, except those considered sensitive for ecological or cultural reasons, which are definable based on location are delineated on maps consistent with the scale of the designation (e.g., global, national, regional, large home range, isolated occurrence, etc.).

- 9.1.4 The *HCV assessment** includes the identification of *Intact Forest Landscapes** and the calculation of *core areas** using January 1, 2017 as the reference date and the methodology for the delineation of *Intact Forest Landscapes** as outlined in Annex H.

INTENT BOX

The reference date of January 1, 2017 aligns with FSC International Generic Indicators. Use of this date maintains consistency of the requirement since the introduction of the Motion 65 Advice Note ADVICE-20-007-018 (2016).

- 9.1.5 Information regarding the location and identity of sensitive sites is held in confidence.

INTENT BOX

Sensitive sites referred to in this Indicator are HCVs that are especially vulnerable to human presence. These sites may include cultural values of spiritual or historic importance and ecological values that are sensitive to damage or disruption.

- 9.1.6 A review by one or more *qualified specialists** is completed. Input from the review is addressed in the *HCV assessment**.

INTENT BOX

For this Indicator, qualified specialists includes individuals who were not involved in the development of the HCV assessment report. The area of expertise of the qualified specialist(s) should be appropriate for the content of the HCV assessment. For example, it may be necessary for the document to be reviewed by an ecologist and a social scientist, depending on the extent to which these topics feature prominently in the HCV assessment. On the other hand, a single reviewer may be sufficient if the person has broad experience in FSC's approach to HCVs.

- 9.1.7 The *HCV assessment** report is updated every five years. Portions of the assessment are updated more frequently in response to changes in the status of *species at risk** or when there are significant changes in the state of other HCVs or HCV areas.

INTENT BOX

When significant changes to the HCV assessment report are implemented or when the report is updated after five years, the expectation is that the update process includes engagement with stakeholders and culturally appropriate engagement with Indigenous Peoples.

Examples of significant changes include: implementation of Indicator 9.2.4b for Intact Forest Landscapes (HCV 2), recognition of ecosystems that have declined markedly in abundance (HCV 3), change in the recognition that the forest plays in meeting the needs of local communities (HCV 5), or when the boundaries of the certified forest are expanded to encompass additional area. Incorporating revisions in the status of species at risk is not considered a significant change.

- 9.1.8 If significant changes have been made to the *HCV assessment** as a result of implementation of Indicator 9.1.7, a review of the updated assessment report is completed by one or more *qualified specialists**.

INTENT BOX

The implementation of Indicator 9.2.4b for Intact Forest Landscapes is considered a significant change and would require review of the updated assessment by one or more qualified specialists.

- 9.1.9 The *HCV assessment** report and review are made publicly available, including in electronic format.
- 9.1.10 When a protection threshold for an *Intact Forest Landscape** is determined by applying approach 9.2.4b, the publicly available *HCV assessment** report includes the following elements in its HCV-2 description.
- 1) Relevant contextual information and maps delineating the extent of the *wider landscape** including *best available information** of the following, where applicable:
 - a) The abundance, security, and *connectivity** of *Intact Forest Landscapes**;
 - b) Landforms, *watersheds**, rivers, geological and soil characteristics;
 - c) Populations of ecologically or culturally significant species, migration pathways, species at risk that require large contiguous habitat, and the sustainability and persistence of these species;
 - d) Location, size, type, and condition of rare ecosystems;
 - e) Indigenous rights and values, including *Indigenous Cultural Landscapes**;

- f) Locations of human settlements, infrastructure, development plans, and agricultural zones;
 - g) Existing and planned forestry operations, and the FSC-certified and non-certified Management Units in the area;
 - h) Regulatory land use planning; and
 - i) Presence or planned extraction of resources other than timber;
- 2) Maps delineating the *Intact Forest Landscapes** and *core areas** as identified through Indicator 9.2.4b;
 - 3) The processes, justifications, and rationales documented in Indicators 9.2.4b, 9.2.5, and 9.2.6;
 - 4) The land use and *management activities** in alignment with Indicators 9.2.2, 9.2.5, and 9.2.6 that are permissible in the non-*core areas** and, separately, in the *core areas** of the *Intact Forest Landscape**;
 - 5) Measures to prevent and mitigate negative impacts of *management activities** in the *Intact Forest Landscape** and their effectiveness in ensuring a precautionary approach;
 - 6) The methodology used to assess and monitor changes to *Intact Forest Landscapes**; and
 - 7) The results from monitoring the *Intact Forest Landscape** as required in Indicator 9.4.1, including any changes over time, and the recent and expected future trends of impacts to the *Intact Forest Landscape**.

INTENT BOX

Relevant Indicators in the Standard where supportive information has likely been gathered, collated, or analyzed include:

- Landscape connectivity, ecosystem integrity, wildlife habitat: Criteria 6.1, 6.4 to 6.8, 9.1.
- Indigenous rights, aspirations, and cultural values: Criteria 3.1, 3.2, 3.5., 4.1, 4.2, 4.5, 4.7, 6.5, 9.1 and through engagement in FPIC and Indigenous Cultural Landscape processes.
- Threats: Criteria 6.1, 9.2.

This Indicator supports clarity, transparency, and accountability on decision-making. The expanded description communicates to local communities, stakeholders, and auditors the context, processes, rationales, and outcomes of the efficient collaborative process in approach 9.2.4b. The Indicator does not apply when The Organization applies approach 9.2.4a.

9.2 ***The Organization** shall develop effective strategies that maintain and/or enhance the identified High *Conservation** Values, through *engagement** with *affected stakeholders**, *interested stakeholders** and *experts**. (C9.2 P&C V4)**

- 9.2.1 Threats to HCVs are identified using *best available information**.
- 9.2.2 Management strategies and actions that use a precautionary approach are developed and are effective to maintain and/or enhance HCVs and to maintain associated HCV areas prior to implementing *management activities**.
- 9.2.3 Indigenous Peoples, affected and interested stakeholders, and *qualified specialists** and/or *experts** are engaged in the development of management strategies and actions to maintain and/or enhance the identified HCVs and HCV areas.

- 9.2.4 Where an *Intact Forest Landscape** exists entirely within or overlaps the Management Unit, a management strategy is developed to protect the *core area** by applying approach 9.2.4a or 9.2.4b below.

INTENT BOX

To ensure the persistence of Intact Forest Landscapes, The Organization is expected to designate a core area for each Intact Forest Landscape that overlaps the Management Unit. The Standard requires stronger protection measures for core areas as indicated by 9.2.6. The Organization must not reduce the size of any Intact Forest Landscape below 50,000 ha regardless of the number of hectares overlapping the management unit as indicated by 9.3.3.

- 9.2.4a At least 80% of the *Intact Forest Landscape**'s area within the Management Unit is designated as *core area**.

- 9.2.4b A protection threshold is determined through an *efficient collaborative process** with Indigenous Peoples and interested and affected stakeholders, where 30–100% of the *Intact Forest Landscape**'s area within the Management Unit is designated as *core area**.

Informed by *best available information**, the protection threshold considers the conditions listed in Section 1 of Table 9.2.4b (where applicable).

Informed by *best available information**, the location of the *core area** considers the elements listed in Section 2 of Table 9.2.4b.

The Organization adheres to approach 9.2.4a until the *efficient collaborative process** is complete.

Table 9.2.4b. List of required considerations when determining the protection threshold and location of *Intact Forest Landscape** *core areas** in approach 9.2.4b.

Section 1: Conditions to Determine a Protection Threshold (non-hierarchical)

1. Threats, including logging, *road** construction and other anthropogenic factors within the *wider landscape** that pose a risk for *fragmentation** of the *Intact Forest Landscape**.
2. Security and abundance of the *Intact Forest Landscape** within the *wider landscape**.
3. The aspirations and goals of Indigenous Peoples related to the *Intact Forest Landscape** and *Indigenous Cultural Landscapes**.
4. Maintenance or enhancement of the ecological values (Elements 1, 2, 3, & 4) listed in Section 2 below.
5. Opportunities for *restoration** or enhancement of the ecological values listed in Section 2 in or adjacent to *Intact Forest Landscapes** or large landscape level forests within the Management Unit or *wider landscape**.
(i.e. forests <50,000 ha. Refer to Question 10 in Annex D: HCV Framework).
6. The scale and intensity of proposed forest operations in the *Intact Forest Landscape**.

7. Evidence of legal or economic rationale for applying approach 9.2.4b.

8. Other *mutually agreed** upon measures or actions within The Organization's *Sphere of Control** or *Sphere of Influence** supporting a balance of the above conditions and with the objective of maintaining or enhancing *Intact Forest Landscapes** at the *wider landscape** level.

Section 2: Elements to the Location of the *Core Area** (non-hierarchical)

1. The contribution of the area to landscape values including *connectivity**, *ecosystem integrity**, ecosystem representation, and cultural importance.

2. The habitat requirements of ecologically or culturally significant species, *species at risk**, and wildlife species that depend on large landscape level forests.

3. Concentrations of ecological and cultural values within the *Intact Forest Landscape**.

4. High carbon storage areas including peatlands.

5. Proximity to legislated *protected areas** within or adjacent to the Management Unit.

6. Mitigation of threats to the *Intact Forest Landscapes** in the Management Unit identified in Section 1 above.

7. Feedback of Indigenous Peoples and self-identified, interested and affected stakeholders during the collaborative process.

INTENT BOX

Relevant Indicators in the Standard where supportive information has likely been gathered, collated, or analyzed include:

Landscape *connectivity**, *ecosystem integrity**, wildlife habitat: Criteria 6.1, 6.4 to 6.8, 9.1.

Indigenous Peoples aspirations and cultural values: Criteria 3.1, 3.2, 3.5., 4.1, 4.2, 4.5, 4.7, 6.5, 9.1 and through *engagement** in FPIC and Indigenous Cultural Landscape processes.

Threats: Criteria 6.1, 9.2.

The Organization is encouraged to integrate existing management strategies in place to meet normative requirements elsewhere within the Standard.

Efficient Collaborative Process*

The intent of the process is to emphasize co-creation and mutual agreement to achieve a balanced outcome for protecting *Intact Forest Landscapes** given the local environmental, cultural, and socio-economic conditions. The inclusion of Indigenous Peoples and *local communities** in management planning ensures concerns, desires, needs, rights, and opportunities are addressed when drafting and implementing strategies and actions.

Based on Indigenous Peoples' aspirations, The Organization is encouraged to provide Indigenous Peoples the opportunity to lead decision-making on the design of management strategies for *Intact Forest Landscapes** consistent with the Indicators in this Standard.

It is reasonable that The Organization, in collaboration with Indigenous Peoples and stakeholders, develops a process for efficient cooperation through a variety of formats and includes delegation of representation across groups that share common expertise or interests.

The Organization should refer to Annex F: Culturally Appropriate *Engagement**, FSC Canada *Intact Forest Landscape** Guidance, and the FSC Canada Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC) Guidance document for recommendations and best practices to ensure the process is culturally appropriate.

Table 9.2.4b, Section 1 - Conditions Determining a Protection Threshold

The guiding concept when determining the appropriate protection threshold is that smaller, more isolated, and high-risk *Intact Forest Landscapes**, or those with areas of high ecological or cultural value, require a higher protection threshold. In contrast, where the conditions indicate that *management activities** would result in a low or positive impact to the *Intact Forest Landscapes** in the *wider landscape** or other large unfragmented landscape level forests, a lower protection threshold—*mutually agreed** upon through the collaborative process— may be appropriate with clear justification. This landscape-level approach to the protection of *Intact Forest Landscapes** derives from the outcomes of Motion 23/2022. The Organization is expected to carry out an assessment of the listed conditions using a precautionary approach to inform the collaborative process and follow the FSC Canada *Intact Forest Landscape** Guidance for recommendations on a risk-assessment and appropriate protection threshold range.

As Indicator 9.3.3 states, The Organization must not be responsible for reducing any *Intact Forest Landscape** below 50,000 ha; If an *Intact Forest Landscape** is 50,000 ha in size, the protection threshold would then be 100%. When considering the activities of other managers and users in adjacent lands outside the Management Unit or *overlapping tenure holders**, Indicator 9.2.4b requires The Organization to consider threats, including logging, *road** construction and other anthropogenic activities when determining the protection threshold. As well, Indicator 9.3.5 requires The Organization to work within their *sphere of influence** to coordinate activities with managers and users of adjacent lands to maintain and/or enhance the HCVs or HCV areas, which includes *Intact Forest Landscapes**.

Multiple *Intact Forest Landscapes within or overlapping the Management Unit**

Protection thresholds may vary between individual *Intact Forest Landscapes** based on the risk-assessment of the conditions and the value and impact of protection relative to one another. The intent is to allow decision-making within the collaborative process to reflect the collective context of all the *Intact Forest Landscapes** to achieve the best possible outcome for protection within the *wider landscape**. The range of 30% to 100% enables flexibility; for example, participants may determine a higher protection threshold for one *Intact Forest Landscape** within the Management Unit when balancing a lower threshold for another *Intact Forest Landscape** within the Management Unit.

Table 9.2.4b, Section 1, Condition 8 – Other Measures or Actions

Other measures or actions *mutually agreed** upon in the collaborative process can be incorporated to mitigate risks or balance trade-offs in the decision-making of protection thresholds. They may also help to achieve agreement in the *efficient collaborative process**.

Criterion 9.3 requires that The Organization implements actions that maintain and/or enhance the *Intact Forest Landscape** and employ a precautionary approach. Measures include managing non-core areas* to support maintaining the HCV 2 status and values of the *Intact Forest Landscape**.

Examples of measures or actions that are within The Organization's *Sphere of Control**.

In non-core areas* of *Intact Forest Landscapes**:

- Reducing the duration of *management activities** and promptly removing infrastructure;
- Avoiding *road** building and harvesting in configurations that cause spatial bottlenecks or accelerate *fragmentation**;
- Increasing monitoring and regeneration efforts;

- Reducing the harvesting level or planning larger retention patch sizes;
- Mitigating windthrow, degradation, and other edge effect impacts adjacent to the *core area** (e.g. buffer zones);
- Restricting harvesting to specific weather conditions;
- Including management strategies to maintain or enhance other HCVs (e.g. protection areas or set asides).

In other areas of the Management Unit:

- Supporting the aspirations and goals of Indigenous Peoples related to *Intact Forest Landscapes** and *Indigenous Cultural Landscapes**;
- Restoring or enhancing ecological values in *Intact Forest Landscapes** or in large landscape level forests (i.e. large forests that are <50,000 ha) within the Management Unit.

Indicator 9.3.5 requires that forest managers work within their *Sphere of Influence** to coordinate activities with managers and users of adjacent lands to maintain and/or enhance the HCVs or HCV areas.

Examples of measures or actions that are within The Organization's *Sphere of Influence** or Control:

- Adding *core areas** to the *Conservation Areas Network** in Indicator 6.5.7.
- Seeking to secure legal regulated protection status for *core areas**.
- Supporting conservation initiatives such as the establishment of Indigenous Protected and Conserved Areas (IPCAs) or Other Effective area-based Conservation Measures (OECMs) to strengthen *long-term** landscape-level protection outcomes.
- Advocating against infrastructure projects, within and outside the Management Unit, that would provide access to currently inaccessible *Intact Forest Landscapes**.

Location of Core Areas*

The intent is for *core areas** to contain the most ecologically valuable and contiguous portions of the *Intact Forest Landscape** within the Management Unit that maximize *connectivity** and wildlife habitat. Determining the location of *core areas** is expected to be discussed within the *efficient collaborative process**.

- 9.2.5 When a protection threshold for an *Intact Forest Landscape** is determined by applying approach 9.2.4b, the following are clearly documented:
- 1) An outline of the *efficient collaborative process**;
 - 2) The justifications for the resulting protection threshold including any *mutually agreed** upon measures or actions to be implemented; and
 - 3) The rationale used to evaluate and locate *core areas**.

INTENT BOX

Element 3 of Indicator 9.1.10 requires the processes, justifications, and rationales documented in 9.2.5 to be included in the HCV-2 description of the publicly available *HCV assessment** report.

The Indicator does not apply when The Organization applies approach 9.2.4a.

- 9.2.6 Where *Intact Forest Landscapes** exist, any forest operations, including harvesting, silviculture, and *road** building, undertaken in *core areas** are confirmed by an *independent expert** as appropriate for achieving only objectives associated with:
- *Restoration** , maintenance, or conservation of ecological integrity; or
 - Community safety related to wildfire; or
 - To support the aspirations of Indigenous Peoples.

The Organization uses a precautionary approach to minimize degradation of intactness. The Organization demonstrates *best efforts** to ensure the following:

- 1) Activities occur over the least amount of time and affect the smallest spatial extent possible;
- 2) Prompt removal of infrastructure once activities are complete;
- 3) Activities avoid causing bottlenecks or *fragmentation**; and
- 4) Activities include prompt regeneration to *restore** a natural condition.

INTENT BOX

The Organization is expected to implement Indicator 9.2.6 in a manner consistent with Indicator 9.2.3. Indicator 9.2.6 requires additional confirmation from an *independent expert** that the forest operations are appropriate to achieve the specified objectives.

- 9.2.7 Management strategies are reviewed and updated in conjunction with updates to the *HCV assessment** report, as described in Indicators 9.1.7 and 9.1.8.

9.3 ***The Organization** shall implement strategies and actions that maintain and/or enhance the identified High Conservation* Values. These strategies and actions shall implement the precautionary approach* and be proportionate to the scale*, intensity* and risk* of management activities*. (C9.3 P&C V4)**

- 9.3.1 The HCVs and HCV areas on which they depend are maintained and/or enhanced, including by implementing the strategies developed through the Indicators in Criterion 9.2.
- 9.3.2 Implementation of the strategies developed in Criterion 9.2 prevent damage and avoid risks to HCVs, even when the scientific information is incomplete or inconclusive, and when the vulnerability and sensitivity of HCVs are uncertain.
- 9.3.3 The Organization's *management activities** do not reduce any *Intact Forest Landscape** below 50,000 ha.

INTENT BOX

This includes Intact Forest Landscapes located entirely within the Management Unit and Intact Forest Landscapes that abut or straddle the boundaries of the Management Unit.

- 9.3.4 Activities that are inconsistent with strategies developed in Criterion 9.2 cease immediately and actions are taken to *restore** and protect the HCVs and HCV areas.
- 9.3.5 The Organization works within its *sphere of influence** to facilitate implementation of activities required to maintain and/or enhance HCVs and HCV areas.

Where a specific HCV or HCV area abuts or straddles a Management Unit boundary, or is potentially affected by activities outside of the Management Unit, The Organization works within its *sphere of influence** to coordinate activities with managers and users of adjacent lands to maintain and/or enhance the HCVs or HCV areas.

9.4 The Organization* shall demonstrate that periodic monitoring is carried out to assess changes in the status of High Conservation* Values, and shall adapt its management strategies to ensure their effective protection*. The monitoring shall be proportionate to the scale*, intensity* and risk* of management activities*, and shall include engagement* with affected stakeholders*, interested stakeholders* and experts*. (C9.4 P&C V4)

9.4.1 A program of periodic monitoring assesses:

- 1) Implementation of management strategies;
- 2) The status of HCVs including the HCV areas on which they depend; and
- 3) The effectiveness of management strategies and actions for the protection of HCVs, to fully maintain and/or enhance the HCVs.

9.4.2 The monitoring program includes *engagement** with affected and interested stakeholders, Indigenous Peoples, and *experts** and/or *qualified specialists**.

INTENT BOX

Stakeholders to involve or to be consulted in the design of the monitoring program include affected and interested stakeholders, Indigenous Peoples, and experts and/or qualified specialists. The extent to which they play a role in implementation of monitoring will depend on the technical expertise needed, their interest, abilities, and capacity required to participate, and the confidentiality of the information being collected. Discussions between the parties and The Organization help in determining the role of the potential participants in monitoring.

9.4.3 The monitoring program has sufficient scope, detail and frequency to detect changes in HCVs, relative to the initial assessment and status identified for each HCV.

INTENT BOX

Monitoring can have significant costs. It is reasonable that The Organizations look for efficiencies in its efforts to design practical monitoring programs.

Monitoring periodicity should be based on:

- 1 The period over which there may be a reasonable expectation of change in the status of HCVs.
 - 2 The period over which it is possible to detect the effects of management strategies and actions; and
 - 3 The risk and intensity of the forestry operations.
-

9.4.4 Management strategies and actions are adapted when monitoring or other new information shows that these strategies and actions are ineffective at addressing the maintenance and/or enhancement of HCVs.

9.4.5 Monitoring needs are reviewed in conjunction with updates to the *HCV assessment** report as described in Indicators 9.1.7 and 9.1.8 and the updates to the management strategies as described in Indicator 9.2.7.

PRINCIPLE* 10: IMPLEMENTATION OF MANAGEMENT ACTIVITIES*

Management activities* conducted by or for **The Organization*** for the **Management Unit*** shall be selected and implemented consistent with **The Organization's** economic, environmental and social policies and **objectives*** and in compliance with the **Principles*** and **Criteria*** collectively.

- 10.1** After harvest or in accordance with the **management plan***, **The Organization*** shall, by natural or artificial regeneration methods, regenerate vegetation cover in a timely fashion to **pre-harvesting*** or more **natural conditions***.

INTENT BOX

The period required for regeneration is typically shorter for areas to be planted or seeded (artificial regeneration) than areas selected for natural regeneration. This Criterion does not give preference to planting as a way to shorten the period for regeneration, because in certain cases, natural regeneration approaches are more suitable.

Regeneration is expected to be achieved for each stand but the composition and structure objectives may be achieved at the block or the landscape level.

- 10.1.1 Harvested sites are regenerated in a timely manner to maintain environmental values.
- 10.1.2 Regeneration activities are implemented in a manner that:
- 1) Is suitable to recover or improve overall pre-harvest or natural forest composition and structure; or
 - 2) According to the **best available information***, promote or enhance the resilience of the future **stand*** while considering climate change.

- 10.2** **The Organization*** shall use species for regeneration that are ecologically well-adapted to the site and to the **management objectives***. **The Organization*** shall use **native species*** and local **genotypes*** for regeneration, unless there is clear and convincing justification for using others. (C10.4 C4).

- 10.2.1 Species chosen for regeneration are ecologically well-adapted to the site, are native species and are of local provenance, unless clear and convincing justification is provided for using non-local genotypes or non-native species.
- 10.2.2 Species chosen for regeneration are consistent with the regeneration objectives.

- 10.3** **The Organization*** shall only use **alien species*** when knowledge and/or experience have shown that any invasive impacts can be controlled and effective mitigation measures are in place. (C6.9 and C10.8 V4)

- 10.3.1 An alien species is used only when direct experience or the results of scientific research demonstrate that the species is not invasive.
- 10.3.2 A plan to prevent the spread of invasive species introduced by The Organization is developed and implemented in a timely manner.

Where The Organization, as a tenure holder, does not have authority over the control of invasive species on the Management Unit, The Organization works within its **sphere of influence*** to prevent the spread of invasive species.

INTENT BOX

The introduction of invasive species is not permitted as per Indicator 10.3.1. Rather, Indicator 10.3.2 applies to invasive species introduced by The Organization inadvertently or prior to certification.

10.3.3 *Management activities** are implemented in cooperation with regulatory bodies and/or *experts** where these exist, with the aim to minimize or control the most significant negative impacts of invasive alien species that were not introduced by The Organization but that are within the scope of The Organization's *management activities**.

10.4 **The Organization* shall not use *genetically modified organisms** in the *Management Unit**. (C6.8 V4)**

10.4.1 Genetically modified organisms (GMOs) are not used.

10.5 **The Organization* shall use silvicultural practices that are ecologically appropriate for the vegetation, species, sites and *management objectives**.**

10.5.1 Silvicultural practices are implemented that are ecologically appropriate for the site and its associated fauna and flora, as well as for management objectives.

INTENT BOX

This Indicator is complementary to Indicators 10.1.1 and 10.1.2 as it applies to all silvicultural practices, such as site preparation, spacing, cleaning and pruning.

Ecologically appropriate silvicultural practices for the site means that the site will have the future capacity to support the native plant and animal species that existed pre-harvest. Ecosystem-based management and a mix of "coarse filter" and "fine filter" approaches can be used to meet this requirement.

In this Indicator, "ecologically appropriate" means that silviculture practices should be performed to meet not only the management objectives but also the requirements of Indicator 6.8.1 (if different).

10.6. **The Organization* shall minimize or avoid the use of *fertilizers**. When *fertilizers** are used, The Organization* shall demonstrate that use is equally, or more ecologically and economically beneficial, than use of *silvicultural systems** that do not require *fertilizers**, and prevent, mitigate, and/or repair damage to *environmental values**, including soils. (C10.7 P&C V4 and Motion 2014#7)**

INTENT BOX

These Indicators apply to fertilizer application directly on the Forest Management Unit. Fertilizer used in the growing of nursery stock, including remaining residues found on or around the plant, or fertilizer added to the growing medium (e.g. commercial peat pellets), are not the focus of these Indicators.

10.6.1 The use of fertilizers is minimized or avoided.

10.6.2 When fertilizers are used:

- 1) Measures are employed to avoid contamination of surface and ground water, protect non-timber forest values and maintain *long-term** soil health, such as soil organic matter, pH balance, and so on;
- 2) Buffer zones are used to protect rare plant communities, riparian zones, watercourses and water bodies;

- 3) Their types, application rates and frequencies, and sites of application are documented;
- 4) Damage to environmental values resulting from fertilizer use is mitigated or repaired; and
- 5) The ecological and economic benefits of using them are equal to or higher than the benefits of *silvicultural systems** that do not require fertilizers.

10.7 The Organization* shall use integrated pest management and *silviculture systems which avoid, or aim at eliminating, the use of chemical *pesticides**. The Organization* shall not use any chemical *pesticides** prohibited by FSC policy. When *pesticides** are used, The Organization* shall prevent, mitigate, and/or repair damage to *environmental values** and human health. (C6. and C10.7 V4)**

INTENT BOX

The FSC Guide to Integrated Pest, Disease and Weed Management in FSC Certified Forests and Plantations (2009) is an optional generic framework that can assist managers in demonstrating that they have a strategy for reducing, minimizing or eliminating the impacts of pesticide use. It can also assist managers in preventing and minimizing impacts from pests, diseases, fire and invasive plant introductions with prevention and alternative control methods rather than the use of chemical pesticides.

The Use of Herbicides in Canada

Vegetation management is crucial to meeting management objectives. In certain circumstances, the use of chemical pesticides may be an acceptable practice. When chemical pesticides are used, a rationale needs to be provided, as described in Indicator 10.7.2. Pesticides are potentially acceptable when used for:

- 1 Controlling composition: The use of herbicides could increase artificially regenerated stands reaching free-to-grow status. (OMNR, 1986; OMNR, 1988; Armson et al., 2001).
- 2 Controlling alien invasive species: The control of alien invasive species may include an integrated pest management (IPM) approach involving chemical treatments. (Wikeem & Miller, 2006).
- 3 Increasing forest yield: While the use of intensive mechanical release combined with early reforestation of tall planting stock may be an asset in the implementation of ecosystem-based management, it could also pose problems where the objective is to maximize wood production (Thiffault & Roy, 2011). Herbicides in some cases have positive impacts on coniferous growth (Thiffault et al., 2003; Comeau, 2014; Homagain et al., 2011).

The use of herbicide spraying on public forests has been, and continues to be, contentious across Canada (Wagner 1994; Buse et al., 1995; Wagner et al., 1998; Thompson et al., 2012). Many communities, including Indigenous Peoples, have expressed concern about the application of glyphosate-based herbicides (Kayahara and Armstrong, 2015), particularly its potential impacts on non-timber forest values such as the harvest of wildlife, fish and edible wild plants. It is important to consider these concerns when developing a vegetation management strategy. This aspect should be kept in mind and addressed through Criterion 4.5 that identify, avoid and mitigate impacts of management activities on local communities and through Criteria 7.5 and 7.6, which require the management plan to be made available to the public and requires complaints related to management activities to be addressed. Furthermore, human and environmental values and health are also addressed in Indicators 10.7.6 and 10.7.7.

10.7.1 Integrated pest management, including selection of *silvicultural systems, is used to avoid or reduce the frequency, extent and amount of chemical *pesticide** applications, and result in non-use or overall reduction in applications.**

- 10.7.2 When chemical *pesticides** are used, a rationale for using them is developed and includes:
- 1) A description of all circumstances where *pesticides** are being considered;
 - 2) The identification and documentation (using *best available information**) of potentially effective non-*pesticide** methods of control, including their impacts on various factors such as tree growth, forest composition, worker's health and safety, and habitats for *species at risk**;
 - 3) A clear preference for non-*pesticide** control methods when their effects meet management objectives and they are not cost prohibitive;
 - 4) Objective evidence demonstrating that the *pesticide** is the only effective, practical and cost-effective way to control the pest; and
 - 5) If *pesticides** are used, and two or more *pesticides** are equally effective, the lesser hazardous *pesticide** is used.
- 10.7.3 Chemical *pesticides** prohibited by FSC's Pesticide Policy are not used or stored by The Organization in the Management Unit unless FSC has granted a derogation. The Organization works within its *sphere of influence** to minimize the use and storage by other parties in the Management Unit of prohibited chemical *pesticides**.
- 10.7.4 Records of *pesticide** usage including trade name, active ingredient, quantity of active ingredient used, date of use, location of use, and reason for use are maintained.

INTENT BOX

It is advisable to maintain records for 10 years or more to be able to track the management usage and history, and to demonstrate the reduction of the quantity of pesticides through time. In addition, ten years should be a sufficient length of time for products used in Canada to track the toxicity levels of pesticides that remain in the environment over long periods of time.

The Organization is expected to maintain records, but it is acknowledged that while not desirable, it may be possible that some records are lost if ownership changes.

- 10.7.5 The use of *pesticides** complies with all legal requirements of Annex A related to the transport, storage, handling, application and emergency procedures for cleanup following accidental spillages of dangerous products.

INTENT BOX

In this Standard, the ILO requirements of the document "Safety in the Use of Chemicals at Work" regarding transport, storage, handling, application and emergency procedures for cleanup following accidental spillages are included in Canadian legislation. Refer to Annex A, sections 3.3, 3.4 and 3.5 of the tables.

- 10.7.6 When *pesticides** are used:
- 1) Measures are employed to avoid contamination of surface and ground water;
 - 2) The selected *pesticide**, application method, timing and pattern of use offers the least risk to humans and environmental values; and
 - 3) While achieving effective results, quantities of *pesticide** used are minimized.

10.7.7 Damage to environmental values from *pesticide** use is prevented and mitigated or repaired. Impacts on human health are avoided.

10.8 *The Organization shall minimize, monitor and strictly control the use of *biological control agents** in accordance with *internationally accepted scientific protocols**. When *biological control agents** are used, *The Organization** shall prevent, mitigate, and/or repair damage to *environmental values**. (C6.8 V4)**

10.8.1 The use of biological control agents by The Organization is minimized, monitored and controlled in compliance with internationally accepted scientific protocols. Biological control agents are used only where alternative pest control methods are:

- 1) Not available; or
- 2) Ineffective in achieving silvicultural objectives; or
- 3) Prohibitively expensive, considering environmental and social costs, risks and benefits.

INTENT BOX

In this Standard, internationally accepted scientific protocols refers to the FAO Code of Conduct for the Import and Release of Exotic Biological Control Agents that has been adopted as International Standards for Phytosanitary Measures (ISPM) under the International Plant Protection Convention (IPPC). The Code sets out internationally agreed procedures for agents capable of self-replication for research, for field release for biological control, or for use as biological pesticides. The Code is addressed to entities, to be followed where national legislation does not exist or is inadequate. In Canada, the Canadian Food Inspection Agency (CFIA) is Canada's representative to the International Plant Protection Convention (IPPC). Canada is a contracting party to the IPPC and ensures the compliance with the Convention.

10.8.2 Rationale for the use of biological control agents is documented and based on peer-reviewed scientific evidence.

10.8.3 The Organization will work within its *sphere of influence** to minimize the use of biological control agents by other parties in the Management Unit.

10.8.4 The use of biological control agents by The Organization is recorded including type, quantity used, period of use, location of use and reason for use.

10.8.5 Damage to environmental values caused by the use of biological control agents is prevented and mitigated or repaired within The Organization's *sphere of influence** and through cooperation with other parties.

10.9 The Organization* shall assess risks* and implement activities that reduce potential negative impacts from natural hazards* proportionate to scale*, intensity*, and risk*.

INTENT BOX

Examples of natural hazards may include droughts, floods, fires, landslides, storms, insects or diseases outbreaks and avalanche.

Recognizing that natural hazards also include natural disturbances, such as wind and fire, mitigating risk means also managing for resilience as opposed to attempting to control or prevent natural hazards.

There are two examples on how damage from natural hazards may be reduced: 1) a reduction of the frequency, intensity, distribution or severity of natural hazards; and 2) the mitigation of their impacts, for example, by salvaging timber.

- 10.9.1 Frequent and/or severe natural hazards that occur regionally are identified using the *best available information**.
- 10.9.2 Potential significant negative impacts of natural hazards on infrastructure, forest resources, *local communities** and Indigenous Peoples in the Management Unit are documented or assessed.
- 10.9.3 *Management activities** that can cause an increase in frequency, distribution or severity of natural hazards are identified for those hazards that may be influenced by management.
- 10.9.4 *Management activities** are modified and/or measures are developed and implemented that reduce the identified risks.

INTENT BOX

The Organization, as a tenure holder, may have limited control over some management activities, for example, fire suppression. If they cannot modify the activity or if they cannot develop measures to limit the identified risk, it would be reasonable for The Organization to work within its sphere of influence to reduce or limit the risk.

10.10 The Organization* shall manage infrastructural development, transport activities and silviculture* so that water resources and soils are protected, and disturbance of and damage to rare* and threatened* species*, habitats*, ecosystems* and landscape* values are prevented, mitigated and/or repaired. (C6.5 V4)

NOTE

The requirements to protect environmental values are covered in Principle 6 and include specific measures related to development, maintenance and use of infrastructure and silviculture. If a certificate holder is in conformance with the Indicators listed below, they will have met the requirements of Criterion 10.10:

- Water resources: Indicators 6.3.1, 6.3.2, 6.7.1 to 6.7.6.
- Soils: Indicators 6.3.1 to 6.3.7.
- Species at risk: 6.4.2 to 6.4.6.
- Rare and threatened habitats & ecosystems values: 6.6.3 and 6.6.4.
- Rare and threatened landscape values: 6.8.1 to 6.8.6.

10.11 *The Organization shall manage activities associated with harvesting and extraction of timber and non-timber *forest** products so that *environmental values** are conserved, *merchantable** waste is reduced, and damage to other products and services is avoided. (C5.3 and C6.5 V4)**

NOTE

Certificate holders will meet the requirements of Criterion 10.11 if they conform with the three Indicators below, as well as Indicators 6.3.1 to 6.3.7 and Indicators 6.6.1. and 6.6.2.

10.11.1 Harvesting practices optimize the use of *merchantable** timber, unless left on-site to provide structural diversity and wildlife habitat, or for silvicultural or cultural reasons.

INTENT BOX

The harvesting of merchantable but non-marketable trees should be minimized.

10.11.2 Harvesting and silvicultural operations are conducted in such a way as to avoid or minimize damage to residual trees (crown, trunk and root), including non-*merchantable*/non-marketable** trees and trees being left for future harvest.

10.11.3 Selection cutting shall maintain or improve *stand** quality while ensuring that native tree species are maintained at an ecologically appropriate scale, unless an alternative yet sound rationale is provided.

10.12 *The Organization shall dispose of *waste materials** in an environmentally appropriate manner. (C6.7 V4)**

10.12.1 Operational procedures related to handling of chemicals, liquid and solid non-organic wastes materials, including fuel, oil, batteries and containers are in place and are implemented. At a minimum, the procedures address:

- 1) Collection, storage, and disposal of waste in an environmentally appropriate manner;
- 2) Adherence to a waste recycling program, where it exists;
- 3) Measures to prevent spills;
- 4) Emergency plans for cleanup and treatment of injuries following spills or other accidents;
- 5) Refueling constraints, including buffers around riparian zones and water bodies;
- 6) Removal of used materials, including machinery and equipment; and
- 7) Securing abandoned buildings owned by The Organization on the Management Unit.

F ANNEXES

(Normative section)

Annex A Minimum list of applicable laws, regulations and nationally ratified international treaties, conventions and agreements

A minimum list of applicable laws, regulations and nationally ratified international treaties, conventions and agreements is provided to facilitate the use of this Standard, with special relevance for FSC Principle 1 and Principle 2. Because of its size, this list is available in a separate Companion Document to Annex A that can be accessed from the FSC Canada website at: <https://ca.fsc.org/en-ca> and look for “Annex A Companion Document”.

The status of the laws, regulations and nationally ratified international treaties, conventions and agreements listed in the Annex A Companion Document are up to date at the time of publication of FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Canada, but are subject to change. An update of the Companion Document will be made available periodically. Efforts were made to identify the key treaties, laws and regulations that apply to forest management in Canada, however, the list provided should not be assumed to be exhaustive. The Organization is required to comply with all applicable laws and regulations, whether or not they are listed in the Companion Document.

Annex B Training Requirements for Workers*

*Workers** have job-specific training related to their area(s) of responsibility that safely and effectively contribute to the implementation of the management plan and all *management activities**. Where relevant, *workers** can:

- 1) Implement forest activities to comply with applicable legal requirements (Criterion 1.5);
- 2) Understand the content, meaning and applicability of the eight ILO Core Labour Conventions (Criterion 2.1);
- 3) Recognize and report on instances of sexual harassment and gender discrimination (Criterion 2.2);
- 4) Safely handle and dispose of hazardous substances to ensure that use does not pose health risks (Criterion 2.3);
- 5) Carry out their responsibilities for particularly dangerous jobs or jobs entailing a special responsibility (Criterion 2.5);
- 6) Exercise their right to refuse work that is believed to be unsafe to the individual or another worker;
- 7) Identify where Indigenous Peoples have legal and customary rights related to *management activities** (Criterion 3.2);
- 8) Identify and implement applicable elements of UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169 (Criterion 3.4);
- 9) Identify sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance to Indigenous Peoples and implement the necessary measures to protect them before the start of *forest management activities** to avoid negative impacts (Criterion 3.5 and Criterion 4.7);
- 10) Identify where *local communities** have legal rights related to *management activities** (Criterion 4.1);
- 11) Carry out social, economic and environmental impact assessments and develop appropriate mitigation measures (Criterion 4.5);
- 12) Implement activities related to the maintenance and/or enhancement of declared ecosystem services (Criterion 5.1);
- 13) Handle, apply and store *pesticides** (Criterion 10.7); and
- 14) Implement procedures for cleaning up spills of waste materials (Criterion 10.12).

Annex C *Worker*'s Health & Safety Program

A *worker*'s Health & Safety Program includes:

- 1) A comprehensive safety policy;
- 2) Identification of danger, and measures to control or to minimize the danger;
- 3) Identification of safety training needs and the provision of safety training;
- 4) The provision of appropriate safety equipment for *workers** and woodlands staff based on assigned tasks (e.g., hardhats, eye protection, gloves, hearing protection, suitable footwear, etc.);
- 5) Regular monitoring of the condition and functionality of safety features on equipment;
- 6) A sufficient ratio of *workers** trained in first aid, for the number of *workers** on site;
- 7) A safety procedure for *workers** working alone; and
- 8) The review and revision of health and safety practices after major incidents or accidents.

Annex D High Conservation Value (HCV) Framework

The High Conservation Value (HCV) framework assists The Organization in determining whether HCVs are present within the forest area under management. Organized as a series of questions, the framework guides the assessment process that is then verified by the certification body.

Upon the successful identification of a HCV, The Organization is required to conform to the Principle 9 Criteria and Indicators.

Use of the Framework

Each of the six categories of HCV contain a series of questions. Negative answers mean that the forest does not include HCV based on current information. Positive answers lead to further investigation through additional questions.

A positive response to any question that is labelled DEFINITIVE means that the elements under consideration are HCVs. However, a negative response to a question labelled DEFINITIVE should not be interpreted to mean that the HCV threshold has not been reached. Rather, The Organization should then answer the questions labelled GUIDANCE. Positive answers indicate the potential presence of HCVs. If questions labelled GUIDANCE are answered positively, it strengthens the potential for the presence of HCVs. It is then expected that The Organization will provide a summary substantiating why the forest area was identified as an HCV or not.

NOTE: The framework is not intended to be a prescriptive approach. Guidance in interpreting the six components of the HCV definition leads the investigation to develop the evidence and thresholds for making an HCV designation. If an HCV designation is determined, The Organization should provide a rationale for the decision. Ultimately, the decision for designating a HCV resides with the forest manager, based on the input of *experts** and *engagement** with stakeholders and Indigenous Peoples. Where community needs (HCV 5) or cultural values (HCV 6) specific to Indigenous Peoples are identified on behalf of the Indigenous Peoples, then as a precautionary approach, *engagement** processes based on the right to Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC) should be used (refer to Principle 3 and FSC Canada Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC) Guidance).

The Issue of Scale

Criterion 9.1 of Principle 9 states that assessments for the presence of HCVs will be appropriate to the scale, intensity and risk of the operation. This implies that expectations for smaller or less intensively managed forest operations would be lower than for larger or more intensively managed operations.

- The FSC definition implies that there are multiple scales at which HCVs are identified. For example, a globally or nationally significant designation would be applied to broad landscapes or at an ecoregional scale, with forests that are significant on a global, continental or national (Canadian) level, while regionally significant might apply to a *watershed** or a specific ecosystem that is significant at the provincial or regional level. At scales where forests are under 1000 ha, a landowner with a rare old growth *stand** in a highly developed landscape would be required to designate the forest as an HCV and ensure the same conservation approach as for a large land holder.
- The FSC definition also identifies differing scales between the various HCVs. For example, a large landscape level forest (Category 2) tends to be large in geographic scale (e.g. greater than 50,000 ha), and therefore the thresholds used to describe the HCV and related conservation attributes must be relevant to that large scale. Identification of an HCV area based on concentrations of biodiversity values (Category 1) may be large, medium or small (e.g. less than 1000 ha in geographic scale), and should be appropriate to the biology of the species or groups of species. Forest areas identified as HCVs based on being in or containing rare, threatened or endangered

ecosystems (Category 3) might encompass a range of scales, from large areas to single *stands** or ecosites. Forests identified as providing basic services of nature (Category 4), and basic needs of communities (Category 5) might be medium to large in scale with conservation actions relevant to those scales.

- HCVs are environmental, ecological and social in nature and do not necessarily follow administrative boundaries. The HCV and the area where it is located may be smaller or larger than the actual forest being assessed or audited. The forest manager's direct responsibility is for the lands over which she/he controls, however Indicators in Principle 9 require The Organization to working within their *sphere of influence** to maintain or enhance HCVs that are beyond their boundaries.

The Precautionary Approach

An important component to the management of HCVs is the application of a precautionary approach. As HCVs are values that are deemed to be regionally, nationally or internationally significant and thus require the highest "duty of care", the application of a precautionary approach is one way of helping to ensure that these values are maintained.

For its use in this Standard, FSC defines the precautionary approach as:

- An approach requiring that when the available information indicates that *management activities** pose a threat of severe or irreversible damage to the environment or a threat to human welfare, The Organization will take explicit and effective measures to prevent the damage and avoid the risks to welfare, even when the scientific information is incomplete or inconclusive, and when the vulnerability and sensitivity of environmental values are uncertain.

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
HCV 1 - Species Diversity Concentrations of biological diversity including endemic species, and rare, threatened or endangered species, that are significant at global, regional or national levels.			
1. Does the forest contain <i>species at risk</i>* or potential habitat of <i>species at risk</i>* as listed by international, national or territorial/provincial authorities?	Ensures the maintenance of vulnerable and/or irreplaceable elements of biodiversity. This Indicator allows for a single species or a concentration of species to meet HCV thresholds.	Global: CITES (Appendix I and II AND III)⁵, IUCN red data list⁶, Conservation Data Centre G1 and G2 element occurrences. Regional/National: Species designated as rare, threatened or endangered by provincial, territorial or national legislation (e.g. provincial red lists and COSEWIC⁷ list in Canada). Information is managed in each province by Conservation Data Centers. The list of species representative of habitat types naturally occurring in the Management Unit is determined or reviewed by qualified ecologist <i>expert</i>*(s).	A single species with habitat in the forest is an HCV in the Canadian context. Are any rare, threatened or endangered species in the forest? (DEFINITIVE) The assessment of whether a species is a HCV is not dependent on whether there is a risk from forest operations. Management and risk to a value is not relevant to the significance of the value. Once it is designated as an HCV, the specific management requirements are determined. In some cases, no management will be required because there is no risk from forestry. (DEFINITIVE) Is there <i>critical habitat</i>* for rare, threatened or endangered species in the forest? (DEFINITIVE) Are there any ecological or taxonomic groups of rare species that would together constitute an HCV? (GUIDANCE)

⁵ <https://www.cites.org/eng/app/index.php>

⁶ <http://www.iucnredlist.org/>

⁷ Information on Canadian federally listed species can be obtained at: <http://www.cosewic.gc.ca/index.htm>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
2. Does the forest contain endemic species?	Ensures the maintenance of vulnerable and/or irreplaceable elements of biodiversity.	Provincial Data Centers will record any endemic species.	Does the forest contain an endemic species or concentration of endemic species? (DEFINITIVE)
3. Does the forest include <i>critical habitat</i> * containing globally, nationally or regionally significant seasonal concentration of species (one or several species, e.g. concentrations of wildlife in breeding sites, wintering sites, migration routes or corridors - latitudinal as well as altitudinal)?	Addresses wildlife habitat requirements critical to maintaining population viability (regional “hot spots”).	Global: BirdLife International⁸, Audubon Society⁹, Conservation International. Regional/National: National and local agencies with responsibility for wildlife conservation; Results from habitat models. Local <i>experts</i>*, traditional knowledge. Bird Studies Canada¹⁰. Ducks Unlimited Canada¹¹.	Are there any landscape features or habitat characteristics that tend to correlate with significant temporal concentrations of a species or groups of species (e.g. where species occurrence data is limited)? (GUIDANCE) Is there an IBA (Important Bird Area) in the forest? (DEFINITIVE)
4. Does the forest contain <i>critical habitat</i> * for regionally significant species (e.g. species	Meta-population viability.	Regionally significant species are determined using the sources below.	Is there known <i>critical habitat</i> * for a regionally significant species (including aquatic species)? (DEFINITIVE)

⁸ BirdLife International provides maps and lists of Important Bird Areas. Current level of coverage varies between regions and in countries within regions. Information (including data sources), can be found at <http://www.birdlife.net/sites/index.cfm>

⁹ Audubon Society. Information on Important Bird Areas in America can be found at: <http://www.audubon.org/bird/iba/index.html>

¹⁰ Bird Studies Canada maintains information on identified Important Bird Areas at: <http://www.ibacanada.ca/>

¹¹ Ducks Unlimited Canada: <http://www.ducks.ca/>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
declining regionally)?		1. Conservation Data Centre G3, S1-S3 species and communities. 2. Range and population estimates from national or local authorities and local <i>experts</i>* for: a) red listed species (see sources above); b) <i>species at risk</i>* (in existing legislation and/or policy); c) results from habitat models; d) species representative of habitat types naturally occurring in the Management Unit or focal species; and, e) species identified as ecologically significant through <i>engagement</i>*. The list of species representative of habitat types naturally occurring in the Management Unit is determined or reviewed by qualified ecologist <i>experts</i>*.	One reason for a species being regionally significant is that there has been a decline over time. This can include aquatic species that are within the forest. Some species may be declining but are still common. Beaver and deer in some areas can undergo steep declines for a period and may be identified as regionally significant. Is the population of regionally significant species locally at risk (e.g. continuing trend is declining rather than stable or improving)? (GUIDANCE) Does the forest contain limiting habitat for regionally significant species? (GUIDANCE)
5. Does the forest support concentrations of species at the edge	Relevant conservation issues include vulnerability against range contraction and potential genetic variation at range edge.	Range and population estimates from national or local authorities and local <i>experts</i> * for:	Are any of the range edge or outlier species representative of habitat types naturally occurring in the Management Unit? (DEFINITIVE)

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
of their natural ranges or outlier populations? ¹²	Outlier and edge of range populations may also play a critical role in genetic/population adaptation to global warming.	a) red listed species (see sources above); b) major forest (tree species) types; and c) species identified as ecologically significant through <i>engagement</i>*. The list of species representative of habitat types naturally occurring in the Management Unit is determined or reviewed by qualified ecologist <i>experts</i>*.	Are there any ecological or taxonomic groups of range edge and/or outlier species/sub-species that would together constitute a globally, nationally or regionally significant concentration? (GUIDANCE) Are there naturally occurring outlier populations of commercial tree species? (DEFINITIVE) Commercial species are highlighted here because of their combined importance, biologically and economically.
6. Does the forest lie within, adjacent to, or contain a conservation area: a) designated by an international authority, b) legally designated or proposed by relevant federal/provincia	Ensures compliance with the conservation intent of a designated <i>protected area</i> *.	International designations include: UNESCO World Heritage Sites¹³. RAMSAR sites¹⁴. International Biological Program sites. Legally designated sites in Canada: CCAD (available from GeoGratis). WWF Designated Areas Data Base.	Are the values for which the conservation area has been identified, consistent with the assessment of HCVs in this framework? (DEFINITIVE) To illustrate, a park may not have any values that would qualify it as an HCV, as in a purely recreational park, although this would be unusual. If it is not designated as a conservation value, a park may have social or economic significance and be designated elsewhere in the HCV framework.

¹² NatureServe provides searchable databases and other information on species and ecosystem distribution in North America (www.natureserve.org) and distribution of birds and mammals in Latin America at www.infonatura.org

¹³ UNESCO World Heritage Sites. Information can be obtained from: <http://en.unesco.org/>

¹⁴ RAMSAR sites. Maps of wetlands of international importance in Canada can be obtained from: www.wetlands.org

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
I/ territorial legislative body, or c) identified in regional land use plans or conservation plans.		Areas under deferral pending completion of land use planning and-or completion of <i>protected areas</i>* system. Local government land use plans. Other conservation planning exercises (e.g., Previous WWF-Canada conservation suitability analysis). Where there is conflicting information regarding the location and/or conservation status of a conservation area designated by an international authority, then the forest manager should assume that the forest contains HCVs.	Are there forest areas important to connect conservation areas to maintain the values for which the conservation areas were identified? (GUIDANCE) Are there forest areas important to safeguard conservation areas to maintain the values for which the conservation areas were identified? (GUIDANCE) Most parks or other areas legally protected from industrial use are not part of a forest license. In that case, the value in need of protection by forest companies could be the boundary line to ensure no trespassing occurs, or visual considerations. Whether a “buffer” is needed or important is a local decision depending on several factors. See Criterion 6.5 of the Standard for further guidance.

HCV 2 – Landscape-level ecosystems and mosaics.

***Intact Forest Landscapes** and large landscape-level ecosystems and ecosystem mosaics that are significant at global, regional or national levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.**

7. Does the forest constitute or form part of a globally, nationally, or regionally significant forest landscape that includes populations of most native species?	Large, intact ecosystems are genetic and population reservoirs for the surrounding lands, and provide areas of sufficient size for landscape-scale natural processes to occur.	Global Forest Watch Canada; GIS-related information from forest companies and government resource-management agencies; Global Forest Watch International.	Are there contiguous forest landscapes that have the following characteristics? (DEFINITIVE) ○ at least 50,000 ha in size; ○ minimal width of 10 km; ○ free of permanent infrastructure and less than 5% non-permanent anthropogenic disturbance; ○ free of large-scale industrial resource extraction activities;
---	---	--	--

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
			- dominated by forest, but inclusion of other ecosystems to a reasonable extent is permissible; - dominated by native plants and communities; - not necessarily dominated by <i>old forest</i>* communities. Refer to Annex H for the methodology on the delineation of <i>Intact Forest Landscapes</i>*. (DEFINITIVE) If unfragmented forest landscapes exist that are larger than 5,000 ha but smaller than 50,000 ha, the area may be considered a landscape level forest and addressed through Question 10 of HCV 3.
HCV 3 – Ecosystems and habitats.			
Rare, threatened, or endangered ecosystem, habitats or refugia.			
8. Does the forest contain naturally rare ecosystem types?	These forests contain many unique species and communities that are adapted only to the conditions found in these rare <i>forest types</i> *.	Conservation Data Centre G1-G3 community types; WWF <i>Ecoregion</i>* Conservation Assessments; Conservation International; National vegetation surveys and maps; Local research institutions; Authorities on Biodiversity (e.g. NatureServe).	Are there ecosystems that have been officially classified as being rare, threatened or endangered by a relevant national or international organization? (DEFINITIVE) Is a significant amount of the global extent of these ecosystems present in the country and/or <i>ecoregion</i>*? (GUIDANCE) Application note: Mapping of these areas may not be precise because of limited information. Mapping may not be required unless forestry operations are to occur in the vicinity.

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
9. Are there ecosystem types within the forest or ecoregion* that have significantly declined or under sufficient present and/or future development pressures that they will likely become rare in the future (e.g., old seral stages)?	Vulnerability and meta-population viability. This Indicator includes anthropogenically rare forest ecosystem types (e.g. late seral red and white pine in eastern Canada).	Relevant government authorities; WWF <i>Ecoregion*</i> Conservation Assessments; Suitable forest or vegetation inventories; Potential vegetation mapping; Regional and local <i>experts*</i>; Conservation Data Centre S1-S3 community types.	Does the forest consist of mature and/or <i>old forest* stands*</i>, where the amount of <i>old forest*</i> remaining in that ecosystem type has been reduced to less than 50% of estimated natural occurrence of <i>old forest*</i>? (DEFINITIVE) Is the forest within an <i>ecoregion*</i> with little remaining original <i>forest type*</i>? (GUIDANCE) Have these ecosystems significantly declined (e.g. less than 50% loss)? (GUIDANCE) Application note: Targets for the previous two questions should be based on landscape dynamics (e.g. <i>range of natural variation*</i>). Is there a significant proportion of the declining ecosystem type within the Management Unit in comparison to the broader <i>ecoregion*</i>? (GUIDANCE) Application note: If a type is abundant in adjacent <i>protected area*</i>, there may be less need for HCV designation. Does potential vegetation mapping identify areas within the Management Unit that can support the declining ecosystem type (i.e., regeneration potential)? (GUIDANCE) How well is each ecosystem effectively secured by the <i>protected area*</i> network and the national/regional legislation? (GUIDANCE) Application note: This question is based on the premise that managers should maintain all <i>forest types*</i> and ages within a reasonable balance considering natural conditions. Although this can be very difficult on some historically damaged forests,

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
			<i>restoration*</i> should be the <i>long-term*</i> goal. For example, the historic old white pine forests of central Ontario are often designated HCVs and are slowly recovering after many decades of high grading in the 19 th and early 20 th centuries.
10. Are large landscape level forests (i.e., large unfragmented forests) rare or absent in the forest or ecoregion*?	In regions or forests where large functioning landscape level forests are rare or do not exist, as in highly fragmented forests, many of the remnant forest patches require consideration as potential HCVs (i.e. 'best of the rest'). Identifies remnant forest patches/blocks where unfragmented (by permanent infrastructure) landscapes do not exceed size thresholds.	Global Forest Watch intactness mapping; Forest cover data provided by companies/government.	Are moderate to large remnant patches (thousands of hectares) the best examples of intact forest for their community and landform types? (GUIDANCE) Does the Management Unit contain intact or undeveloped <i>watersheds*</i> over 5,000 ha in size? (Guidance) Do the largest remnant forest patches include a significant proportion of climax species (i.e. not dominated by pioneer species)? (GUIDANCE) Application note: 'Remnant', here describes the remaining patches of the natural forest that still contain the original ecosystem characteristic species and structure. Application note: In designating remnant landscape level forests, managers should consider structural features such as woody debris and standing dead trees (i.e. structurally complex), late seral <i>stands*</i>, known populations of significant species, or species representative of habitat types naturally occurring in the Management Unit.
11. Are there nationally /regionally significant diverse or unique forest ecosystems or forests associated	Vulnerability; species diversity; significant ecological processes.	Relevant government authorities; WWF <i>Ecoregion*</i> Conservation Assessments;	Are there important and/or unique geological areas that strongly influence vegetation cover or wildlife features, such as serpentine soils, marble outcrops, karst hot springs for bat hibernacula? (GUIDANCE)

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
with unique aquatic ecosystems?		Regional environmental background studies; Ducks Unlimited Canada; Government databases (e.g. Areas of Natural & Scientific Interest (ANSI) in Ontario).	Are there important and/or unique microclimatic conditions that strongly influence vegetation cover, such as high rainfall, protected valleys? (GUIDANCE) Do these ecosystems possess any exceptional characteristics, including exceptional species richness, critical species, etc.? (GUIDANCE)
HCV 4 – Critical ecosystem services.			
Basic ecosystem services in critical situations, including protection of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.			
12. Does the forest provide a significant source of drinking water?	The potential impact to human communities is so significant as to be catastrophic, leading to significant loss of productivity, or sickness and death.	The forest manager should obtain the information from the relevant authorities - resource management studies, relevant economic development studies, traditional occupancy studies, regional land use plans, etc. - to determine if the wrong actions or management could cause serious cumulative or catastrophic impacts on these basic services.	Is the <i>watershed*</i> or <i>recharge area*</i> critical to maintaining the quality, quantity and seasonal flows of the primary drinking water source for a community or group of individuals? (DEFINITIVE) Is the <i>watershed*</i> or <i>recharge area*</i> critical to maintaining the quality, quantity and seasonal flows of agricultural irrigation water sources, or water for other significant economic activities? (GUIDANCE)
13. Are there forests that provide a significant ecological service in mediating flooding and/or drought, controlling stream flow regulation, and water quality?	Forest areas play a critical role in maintaining water quantity and quality and the service breakdown has catastrophic impacts or is irreplaceable.	Hydrological maps; Hydrologists in government departments or local research institutions.	Are there high-risk areas for flooding or drought? (DEFINITIVE) Are there particular forest areas that potentially affect a significant or major portion of the water flow? For example, 75% of water in a larger <i>watershed*</i> is funneled through a specific catchment area, river channel, or other critical sub- <i>watershed*</i> area. (GUIDANCE)

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
			Does the forest occur within a sub-<i>watershed</i>* that is critically important to the overall catchment basin? (GUIDANCE) Are there particular forest areas that are critical sub-<i>watersheds</i>* that potentially affect water supplies for other services, such as reservoirs, irrigation, river recharge or hydroelectric schemes? (GUIDANCE)
14. Are there forests critical to erosion control?	Soil, terrain or snow stability, including control of erosion, sedimentation, landslides, or avalanches.	Maps, remote sensing data, aerial photos, Governmental departments; <i>Engagement</i>* with relevant <i>experts</i>*.	Are there forest areas where the degree of slope carries high risk of erosion, landslides and avalanches that affect human infrastructure? (DEFINITIVE) Are there soil and geology site types that are particularly prone to erosion and terrain instability? (GUIDANCE) Is the spatial extent of erosion-prone or unstable terrain such that the forest is at high risk of impact and of cumulative impacts? (GUIDANCE)
15. Are there forests that provide a critical barrier to destructive fire (in areas where fire is not a common natural agent of disturbance)?	Recent forest fire events in Canada have raised the interest in this concept.		Are there forest areas where there is a high risk of uncontrolled, destructive fire and in which forest areas or <i>forest types</i>* can act as a barrier to the spread of fires? Do these forest areas contain or are they adjacent to human settlements or communities that would be at risk from uncontrolled, destructive forest fire? Managers should accept HCV designations for forests adjacent to communities and manage using the precautionary principle in consideration of the safety of the inhabitants. How this is defined should be determined locally.

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
16. Are there forest landscapes, or regional landscapes, that have a critical impact on agriculture or fisheries?	Mediating wind and microclimate at an ecoregional scale affecting agricultural or fisheries production. Riparian forests play a critical role in maintaining fisheries by providing bank stability, sediment control, nutrient inputs, and microhabitats. More local effects of forest areas adjacent to agriculture and fisheries production may be more relevant in the HCV component regarding meeting basic needs of <i>local communities</i>*.	Agricultural and Fisheries scientists in university and research institutions; Governmental Departments (e.g. Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Agriculture and Agri-food Canada); Local and provincial government departments.	Are there agricultural or fisheries production areas in the forest that are potentially severely negatively affected by changes in wind and microclimate and microhabitat, such as woody debris from riparian vegetation? (GUIDANCE) Are there fisheries areas, spawning areas or other critical fish habitat - either commercial or tourism outfitters - dependent on the larger landscape condition? Are there other non-timber resources such as fur trap lines, wild rice production areas, mushroom <i>harvest areas</i>*, berry <i>harvest areas</i>* that are dependent on the larger landscape?

HCV 5 - Community needs.

Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of *local communities** or Indigenous Peoples (for example for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water), identified through *engagement** with these communities or Indigenous Peoples.

17. Are there <i>local communities</i>*? This should include both people living inside the forest area and those living adjacent to it.	There is a distinction being made between the use by individuals and where use of the forest is fundamental for <i>local communities</i>*.	<i>Engagement</i>* with the communities themselves is the most important way of collecting information. Literature sources, such as reports and papers, can be very useful sources of information. Knowledgeable people and organizations such as <i>local community</i>* organizations, NGOs, or academic institutions. This type of group can often provide a quick	Having established that the community uses the forest to fulfill some needs it is now necessary to assess whether it is fundamental to meeting any basic needs. This question applies to all livelihoods, not just subsistence. The way that this assessment can be done is variable, depending on the socio-economic context and the need. However, it will always involve <i>engagement</i>* with the community itself. <i>Engagement</i>* can be conducted by people other than the forest managers directly. <i>Engagement</i>* should use locally appropriate language, and not FSC technical terminology, such as HCV, threshold, etc.).
--	---	--	--

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
		introduction to the issues and provide support for further work. Review of studies of traditional land use and non-timber use of the forest. Review of socio-economic profiles of communities.	The following are general guidance questions to assess whether the value meets HCV thresholds. Is this the sole source of the value(s) for the <i>local communities</i>*? (GUIDANCE) Is there a significant impact to the <i>local communities</i>* because of a reduced supply of these values? (GUIDANCE) If community members make use of the forest for basic needs or livelihoods, such as food, medicine, fodder, fuel, building, craft materials, and income, it should be assumed that this is an important value and a possible HCV.

HCV 6 - Cultural values.

Sites, resources, habitats and landscapes of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of critical cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of *local communities or Indigenous Peoples, identified through *engagement** with these *local communities** or Indigenous Peoples. (Source: FSC 2011).**

18. Is the traditional cultural identity of the <i>local community</i>* OR Indigenous Peoples particularly tied to a specific forest area?	In this context of this standard "<i>local community</i>*" is defined as: (Human) communities that are in or adjacent to the Management Unit, and also those that are close enough to have a significant impact on the economy or the environmental values of the Management Unit or to have their economies, <i>collective rights</i>*, or environments values significantly affected by the <i>forest</i>	<i>Engagement</i>* with the communities themselves is the most important way of collecting information. This is difficult to do and may require professional help in the planning or implementation. Knowledgeable people and organizations such as <i>local community</i>* organizations or academic institutions. Literature sources such as reports and papers, where available.	Assessors will be presented with a wide range of HCVs as culturally significant. The practice in Canada is acceptance of this range of values as HCVs. Some forest inhabitants consider the entire forest to be of significant value, while others have a small area with a local well-known value. There are several examples of values that may not meet the threshold (or significance level) for FSC definition, but which functionally must use precautionary management. Do the <i>local communities</i>* or Indigenous Peoples consider the forest to be culturally significant? Possible indications for cultural importance include:
--	--	---	---

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
	<i>management activities*</i> on the Management Unit. In Canada, communities to be considered are the ones officially identified as a municipality by the Canada Revenue Agency who lists them and shows their qualified donees status under the Income Tax Act (http://www.cra-arc.gc.ca/chrts-gvng/qlfd-dns/mncplts-eng.html). The respective provincial lists may be also used. Identifies critical cultural areas that contribute to the persistence of <i>Indigenous Cultural Landscapes*</i>.	Review studies of traditional land use and non-timber use of the forest. Review of socio-economic profiles of communities. Review of websites, community promotional material, brochures, etc.	- Names for landscape features; - Stories about the forest; - Sacred or religious sites; - Historical associations; and - Amenity or aesthetic value. Are there areas of the forest that are critical in supporting the cultural relationship of Indigenous Peoples with the land?
19. Is there a significant overlap of values, such as ecological and/or cultural values, that individually did not meet HCV thresholds, but collectively constitute HCVs?	Consideration of several spatially overlapping values is important in optimizing conservation management. Individual values that do not meet the threshold for critical and/or outstanding may collectively meet the threshold.	Neighbourhood analysis can be used to summarize point values, such as species occurrences, feeding areas, mineral licks, or spawning areas, within a spatial window of a size that is relevant for the ecosystem type and values under consideration. If concentration of single values was not undertaken in any of the previous steps (e.g. S1-S3 species occurrences), then include this in the analysis.	Are there several overlapping conservation values? (GUIDANCE) Application note: When there are two or more events or values that may not meet an HCV threshold individually, managers should use their discretion in assessing the combined value as HCV. Do the overlapping values represent multiple themes, as species distribution, significant habitat, concentration area, relatively unfragmented landscape, for example? (GUIDANCE) Are the overlapping values within, adjacent to, or near an identified HCV or existing <i>designated conservation lands*</i> or <i>secondary conservation lands*</i>? (GUIDANCE)

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV
		Overlays of multiple values to assess spatial coincidence.	Are the overlapping values adjacent or near an existing <i>protected area</i>*? (GUIDANCE) Do the overlapping values provide an option to meet <i>protected areas</i>* representation requirements, that is, can one overlap an under-represented landscape as assessed using a <i>protected areas</i>* gap analysis? (GUIDANCE)

Annex E *Dispute** Resolution

A key outcome of implementing this Standard is the avoidance and/or mitigation of *disputes**. All *disputes** that need to be addressed through this Standard are related to, or a consequence of, The Organization's activities. Requirements throughout the Standard are designed to foster dialogue, and involvement in management planning is intended to build agreement and support. However, a *dispute** may still occur and the *dispute** resolution process should be used only after other measures have been exhausted.

Please note this Standard is making an important distinction between a *dispute** and a *dispute of substantial magnitude**. As per the Glossary:

Dispute*: Represent a formal disagreement, after the initial attempts to resolve a *complaint** have not been achieved.

Dispute of substantial magnitude*: Is a *dispute** that involves one or more of the following:

- Where the negative impact of *management activities** on *local communities** or on Indigenous Peoples' legal or customary rights is of such a scale that it cannot be reversed or mitigated;
- Physical violence;
- Significant destruction of property;
- Presence of law enforcement or military bodies;
- Acts of intimidation against *workers** and stakeholders.

A *dispute** can become of substantial magnitude if it is of substantial duration, implies a significant number of interest and has a significant negative impact to the forest resource / value.

*Disputes of substantial magnitude** are not common and represent the exception.

Structure of the *Dispute** Resolution Criteria

The structure of the Criteria addressing *disputes** throughout the Standard (Criteria 1.6, 2.6, 4.6 and 7.6) is designed to address the various types of concerns raised by individuals or communities, and ensure the appropriate level of response and action required is taken by The Organization.

In the everyday operation of The Organization, enquiries, such as requests for information or a request for a solution to an issue, from stakeholders are common and most often The Organization can easily and expeditiously address these. If a stakeholder is not satisfied with the outcome of its query or is not receiving a response within a reasonable time, he may lodge a *complaint** internally with The Organization. If the *complaint** has not been resolved to the satisfaction of the stakeholder, and if the stakeholder wishes to pursue the matter further, the issue escalates to a *dispute**.

In this Standard, this escalation process requires that The Organization have in place a system to track, manage and address *complaints** and *disputes** related to:

- Statutory or customary law (Criterion 1.6);
- Working conditions while working for The Organization (Criterion 2.6);
- Impacts of *management activities** on *local communities** and Indigenous Peoples (Criterion 4.6); and
- Impacts of *management activities** on other affected stakeholders (excludes *local communities** and Indigenous Peoples) (Criterion 7.6).

To address the application of *dispute** management amongst various parties and aspects of forest management, a consistent framework has been developed and is being applied to each applicable Criterion. However, it is possible that The Organization chooses to use the same tool or process to meet

the requirements of the Indicators in different Criteria. The general framework steps applied in Criteria 1.6, 2.6, 4.6 and 7.6 are:

- 1) A system is in place whereby people can make their *complaints** known to The Organization;
- 2) The development of a general *dispute** resolution process framework, which needs to be adapted through culturally appropriate *engagement** prior to implementation;
- 3) *Complaints** are responded to in a timely manner. If not, they become a *dispute** and the *dispute** resolution process is then adapted and implemented;
- 4) Records of *complaints** and *disputes** are kept, as well as outcomes of actions taken;
- 5) For Principles 1 and 4 only: If the *dispute** is elevated to a *dispute of substantial magnitude**, then the value or right at risk must be maintained/protected.

Dispute* Resolution Processes and Indigenous Peoples

*Complaints** from Indigenous Peoples are dealt with using the same structure as described above. *Complaints** related to statutory or customary law, working conditions (if applicable), and to impacts of *forest management activities** are addressed as described above. However, Indigenous Peoples may also have *complaints** related to the implementation of agreements they may have with The Organization that are covered in Principle 3. The Standard also requires a *dispute** resolution process clause to be included in any binding agreements (Indicator 3.3.3) and to Free, Prior and Informed Consent agreements with Indigenous Peoples (Indicator 3.2.5).

Dispute* Resolution Process

The design of the *dispute** resolution processes and the related resolution mechanisms should consider the following:

- Account for a wide range of situations, including addressing cases of *dispute of substantial magnitude**;
- The use of different approaches to resolving the *dispute**, which may include a neutral third party, such as mediation, negotiation or other conciliatory processes. These should match the level and nature of the *dispute**;
- Consensual or restorative processes such as mediation, negotiation or other conciliatory processes where the goal is for the parties to reach agreement are preferred;
- *Disputes** are best dealt with those closest to the situation and with the relevant parties involved. If there is a *dispute of substantial magnitude**, the response should be tied to the specific area that is under *dispute**;
- Ceasing operations may be considered as a part of the *dispute** resolution process when proposed *management activities** may negatively impact the rights or interests of affected stakeholders or Indigenous Peoples, or may generate irreversible damage to an important value;
- In the case of *disputes** arising from the infringement of Indigenous Peoples rights, an immediate cease of operations should be part of the resolution mechanism, for as long as is required to establish an appropriate *dispute** resolution process. The intention here is to require that the parties engage in dialogue to properly identify the nature and scope of the *dispute** and appropriate mechanisms for resolving such a *dispute**.

If a *dispute** occurs, The Organization is expected to follow the steps required in their *dispute** resolution process, to respond in a timely manner, to document the *dispute** and the process used, and to justify unresolved *disputes**. It is also expected that all parties involved in the *dispute** are working in good faith

and in a reasonable manner, and that all parties can demonstrate the efforts deployed to resolve the *dispute**.

The Standard also requires that The Organization's *dispute** resolution processes be publicly available to inform parties, at least, of the general process. The Standard does not necessarily require the specific aspects of the *dispute** resolution process implemented with a specific party to be public. Parties may agree on what should be public and what should remain confidential.

For interested stakeholders and interested individuals, no *dispute** resolution process is formally required to be put in place. However, the Standard requires The Organization to provide opportunities for *engagement** in the planning process of *management activities** upon request. Interested stakeholders may also use the processes described in the last section of this Annex: FSC Procedures to Process *Disputes** and Appeals.

Disputes* of Substantial Magnitude

If the *dispute** escalates and becomes a *dispute of substantial magnitude**, operations may be required to cease in the area directly related to where the *dispute** exists. However, ceasing operations should be used as a last resort when the previous actions have failed to resolve the issue, and where there is a real danger associated to the continuation of forest operations. It is then required that the *dispute** resolution process includes mechanisms to address *disputes** of substantial magnitude which should include provisions in case of an emergency to avoid implementing the last resort action of ceasing operations.

Existing Dispute* Resolution Processes

Where local or national laws for resolving grievances and/or compensation exist, implementation of these provisions might suffice to conform with these Criteria, if agreed through *engagement** with the party involved. If there is no agreement that these laws suffice, then additional mechanisms developed through *engagement** with the party involved, are required.

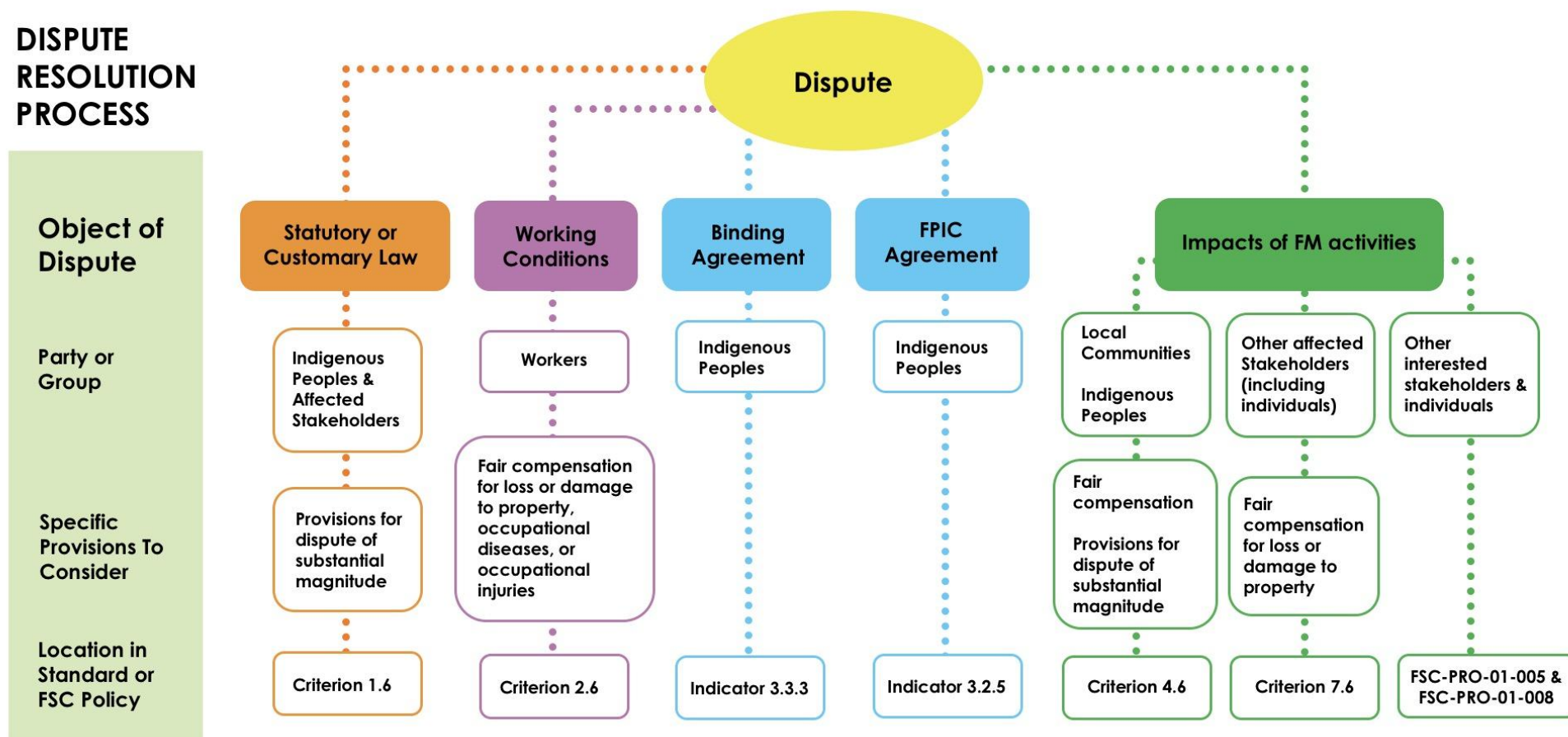
Disputes* Beyond the Control of The Organization

It is recognized that The Organization may not have the control over statutory or legal matters or they may not be directly involved in the *dispute** on the Management Unit. Where the *dispute** is between a complainant and another party, The Organization should work within its *sphere of influence** to encourage parties, where appropriate, to work together to resolve the *dispute**.

FSC Procedures to Process Disputes* and Appeals

Lastly, FSC has its own *dispute** resolution system and procedures for processing *disputes** and appeals (see FSC-PRO-01-005 and FSC-PRO-01-008). Certifying bodies also have *dispute** resolution systems in place for addressing concerns related to conformance to FSC standards. These are available to any stakeholder or interested party to enact. Stakeholders or interested parties are encouraged to first attempt to bring the issue forward to The Organization for resolution prior to enacting FSC's or the certifying body's *dispute** resolution system.

DISPUTE RESOLUTION PROCESS



Annex F Culturally Appropriate Engagement*

Throughout the Standard, it is required to engage with various parties in a culturally appropriate way. The Organization should develop a methodology to implement culturally appropriate approaches for *engagement**. This Annex intends to give some guidance to facilitate the implementation of *engagement** approaches that will foster the efficient involvement of specific groups.

The level of *engagement** required and the culturally appropriate approaches used can vary depending on the intended group and the context. Good and efficient *engagement** involves the consideration of the following:

A) Level of *engagement**

Different levels of *engagement** exist. They include the following:

- **Inform:** To provide information primarily in one direction, with limited opportunity for dialogue.
- **Consult:** To obtain feedback on analysis, alternatives and/or decision.
- **Involve:** To work directly, throughout the process, to ensure that intended group issues and concerns are consistently understood and considered.
- **Collaborate:** To partner with the intended group in each aspect of the decision including the development of alternatives and the identification of the preferred solution.
- **Empower:** To place final decision-making in the authority of the intended group.

The level of *engagement** may be variable depending on the intended group, the rights and responsibilities of the group and the level of impact of the activity on the intended group. In the Standard, the level of *engagement** is also partly defined by the specific required action of the Standard, such as inform, develop, etc., as described in the Indicator.

B) Culturally appropriate approach

The approach can be adapted to the level of *engagement** required and adjusted to meet the needs of the intended group, as appropriate.

A culturally appropriate approach should consider, but not restricted to, the elements listed below.

1. Cultural difference/ attitude:

- a) Some cultural differences are identified and the state of the actual relationship is assessed to determine;
- b) Preferences for direct or indirect negotiation;
- c) Attitude toward authority;
- d) Attitudes toward competition, cooperation and conflicts;
- e) Status of the current relationship and existing level of trust;
- f) Presence of disillusionment on experience;
- g) Lack of consultation or consultation fatigue;
- h) Ways of understanding and interpreting the world.

2. Representation:

- Representatives are identified for each activity in which *engagement** is required, including (where appropriate) local institutions, organizations and authorities.
- Groups are equally represented and included.

3. Communication:

Meaningful communication between parties includes:

- a) Mechanisms for how information is exchanged;
- b) Different methods for cross-cultural communication including how information is presented;
- c) Sensitivities in the use of jargon;
- d) Shared level of understanding of the language used to communicate forest management planning and certification processes (written and spoken).
- e) Utilization of a language spoken/understood by the group.

4. Documentation:

- Outcomes and agreements are recorded and shared with approval sought on the content and intended use of the records.
- The way outcomes and agreements are shared both internally and externally should be agreed to in advance.

5. Timeframe:

- Timeframe for the *engagement*^{**} is determined and allows adequate involvement.
- Availability of participants is considered.

6. Capacity:

- Consideration is given to the capacity and required resources necessary to facilitate an appropriate level of *engagement*^{*}, including access to appropriate technology and the level of knowledge of the affected community.

7. Decision making:

- Approach for making decisions, including consideration of direct or indirect negotiation, is determined.

Annex G Caribou in the Standard

Caribou are recognized as an important species in Canada because of the social significance attached to their continued existence, their status as a hallmark *species at risk** and the fact that their presence in a forest can be an indication of *ecosystem integrity**. For these reasons, special attention has been paid to caribou in this Standard, and Indicator 6.4.5 is devoted entirely to management of habitat for boreal woodland caribou.

Caribou taxonomy

All of Canada's caribou- from woodland caribou in the boreal forest to the vast migratory herds of the tundra - belong to a single species, *Rangifer tarandus*. However, after that basic distinction, the taxonomy and language used to describe subdivisions within the species become complex. This is due in large part to the continuing evolution of our understanding of caribou ecology, and to some extent, the burden of language used over the years to describe caribou. The following terms are used to describe subdivisions within the species: subspecies, migratory patterns, ecotypes, designatable units, population groups, populations, subpopulations, ranges, herds, and probably others. There is common distinction made between mountain and boreal caribou, referred to here as different ecotypes of woodland caribou.

Mountain caribou, which are divided into northern and southern populations, are found in western Canada. Boreal caribou are found throughout the northern boreal forests. Forest management occurs in the areas occupied by both ecotypes and so it is appropriate that both enter discussions related to the FSC Standard. Mountain caribou are addressed in the last portion of this Annex.

The preferred means of addressing the Indicator is to manage caribou habitat according to a SARA-compliant *range plan** prepared and implemented in a manner consistent with the content, measures and objectives in the *Range Plan** Guidance for Woodland Caribou (ECCC 2016). However, given that it may be a while before such *range plans** exist in all areas of the boreal forest inhabited by caribou, the Indicator presents two options for achieving conformance in circumstances where a SARA-compliant *range plan** does not yet exist. The first option is to manage according to the requirements of Table 6.4.5, and the second is to implement other approaches developed through an *engagement** process, that is still consistent with the *Range Plan** Guidance requirements.

It is possible that management following the requirements of Table 6.4.5 will be implemented in forests across the country until a SARA-compliant *range plan** has been developed and is being implemented. Although Table 6.4.5 is detailed, following its requirements involves a relatively simple application of a risk management approach to managing caribou habitat. Many of the requirements are based on the approach put forward in the Federal Recovery Strategy for the boreal population of woodland caribou (Environment Canada, 2012) regarding the identification and effective protection of *critical habitat**. The key supporting documents for the Federal Recovery Strategy are Environment Canada's scientific review and assessment of *critical habitat** (Environment Canada, 2008; Environment Canada, 2011) that provided empirical evidence of a strong negative correlation between the extent of disturbance within *caribou ranges** and recruitment into the population.

Examples of Implementation of Table 6.4.5

There are two overlapping spatial components to Table 6.4.5:

1. The cumulative level of disturbance within *caribou ranges**, and
2. The cumulative level of disturbance within the portions of *Forest Management Units** that overlap *caribou ranges**.

Because of the number of ways in which *caribou ranges** and *Forest Management Units** may overlap, some complexity may arise in the application of the requirements related to Table 6.4.5 in different circumstances. Figures 1 through 3 provide examples of the requirements in different situations:

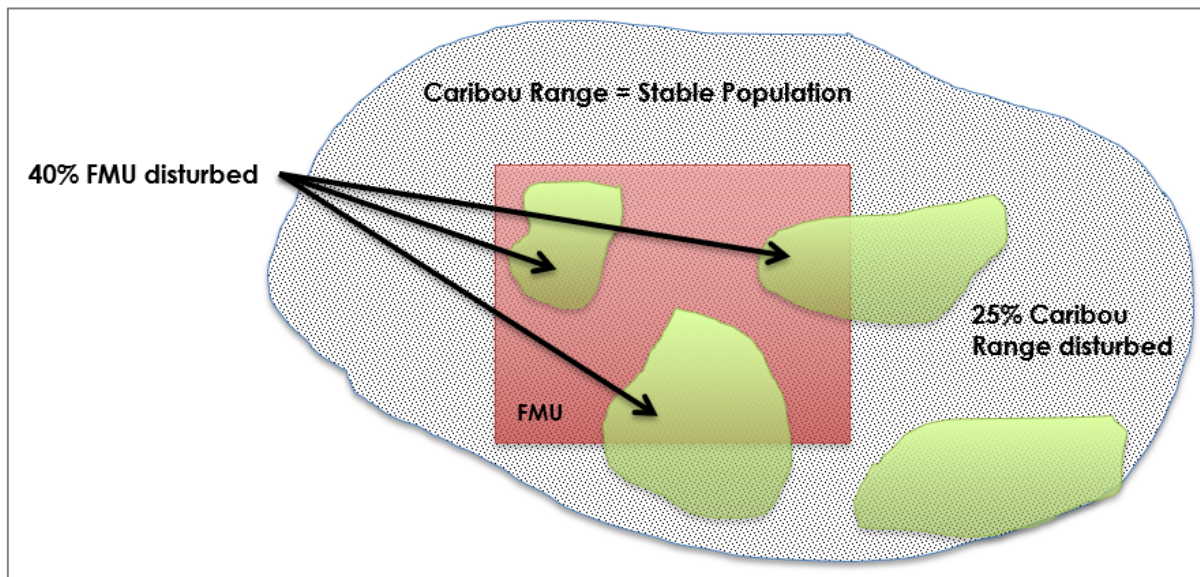


Figure 1: Example of Indicator requirements with a stable population.

In Figure 1, a single *Forest Management Unit** with 40% disturbance is completely enveloped by a *caribou range**. The disturbed area in the range is 25%. Given that the caribou population status is stable, requirements 2, and 4 (Cell D) in Table 6.4.5 apply.

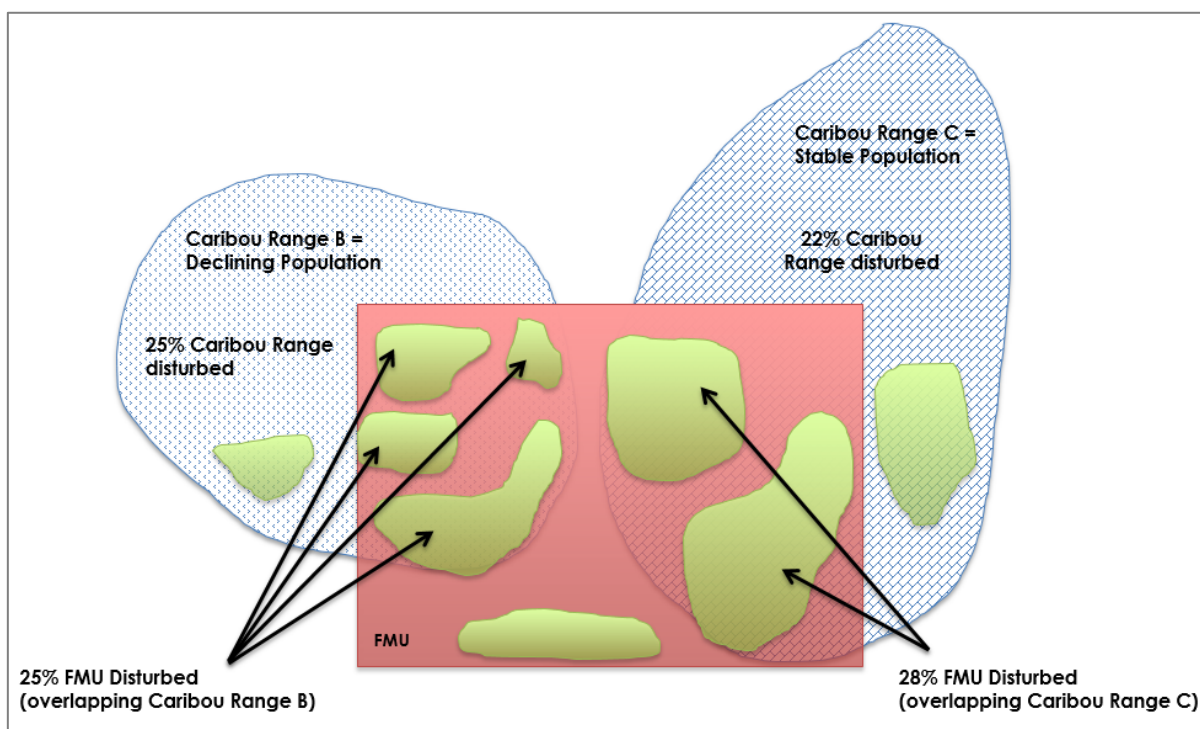


Figure 2: Example of Indicator requirements in a complex situation: One FMU within two ranges.

Figure 2 presents a situation in which one *Forest Management Unit** overlaps with portions of two *caribou ranges**. Because the caribou population in *Caribou Range** B is in decline, and the level of disturbance in the range is moderate, between 20 and 35%, requirements 2,3,5, and 6 (Cell I) associated with Table 6.4.5 apply to that portion of the FMU that overlaps with Range B.

In *Caribou Range** C, the proportion of area disturbed is moderate (22%). The proportion of the *Forest Management Unit** disturbed in the overlapping area is 28% and the caribou population is stable. Therefore, requirements 1 and 3 (Cell C) of Table 6.4.5 apply to the portion of the FMU that overlaps with Range C.

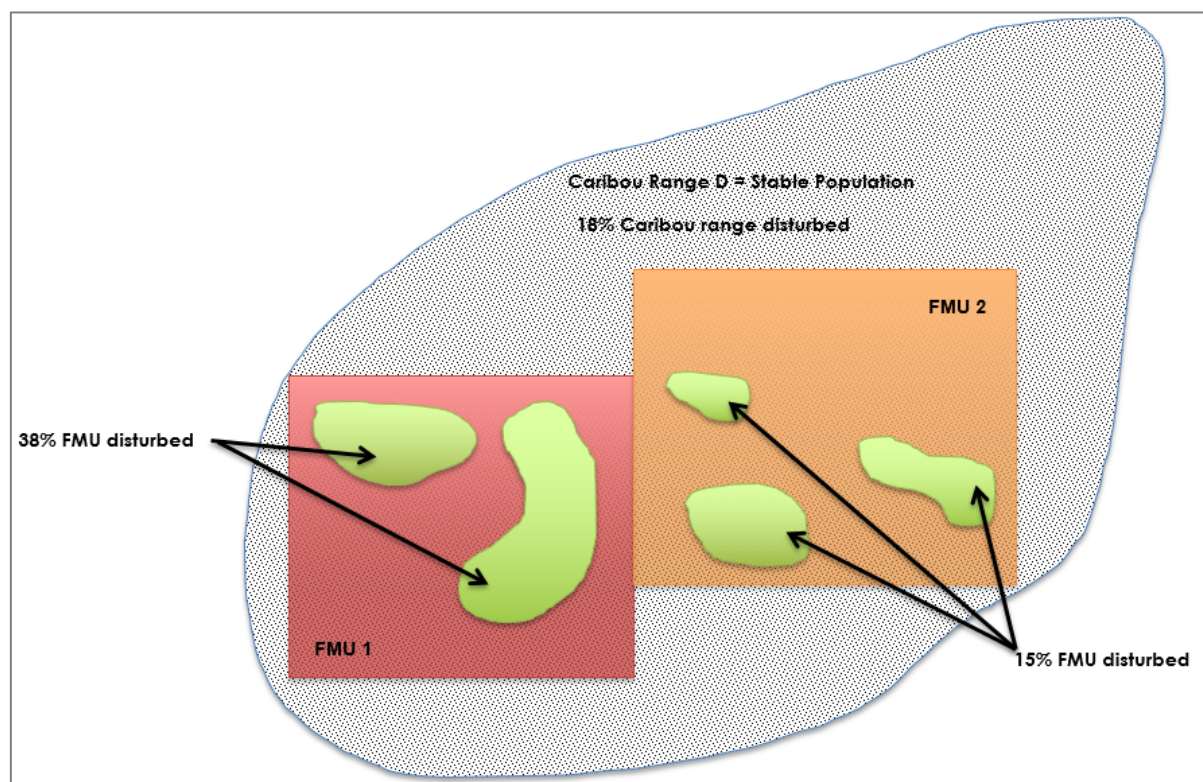


Figure 3. Example of Indicator requirements in a complex situation: Two FMUs exist within a single *caribou range*^{*}.

In Figure 3, the proportion of the *caribou range*^{*} that is disturbed is 18% and the caribou population is stable. With 38% of *Forest Management Unit*^{*} 1 disturbed, requirement 2 (Cell B) associated with Table 6.4.5 applies to FMU 1. With only 15% of *Forest Management Unit*^{*} 2 disturbed, requirement 1 (Cell A) applies to that FMU.

Caribou and Landscape Management

Important issues in managing caribou habitat, and the habitat of other wide-range species are also addressed in components of other Indicators in the Standard. Most of these are in Criterion 6.8, which addresses landscape management through Indicators related to:

- Management of *forest types*^{*} and age classes (Indicators 6.8.1 and 6.8.2);
- Management of forest patches (Indicators 6.8.3 and 6.8.4);
- Maintenance and *restoration*^{*} of *connectivity*^{*} (Indicator 6.8.5);
- Access management (Indicator 6.8.6);
- Coordinating landscape *management activities*^{*} with adjoining lands (Indicator 6.8.7).

The combination of Indicators 6.8.1 to 6.8.5 is intended to result in contiguous areas of forest that provide for habitat *connectivity*^{*}. Simple corridors of relatively unbroken forest through a disturbed matrix do not suffice in providing *connectivity*^{*} because caribou do not consistently travel along the same pathway. Therefore, broad expanses of contiguous habitat are needed to provide *connectivity*^{*}.

Access management, as addressed in Indicator 6.8.6, is a critical component of managing the quality of forests for caribou. Impacts from access result in:

- *Fragmentation*^{*} of forest communities, degrading the *connectivity*^{*} of those communities;
- Creation of barriers for movement of caribou and other sensitive wildlife;

- Provision of access corridors for predators, which may increase predation rates;
- Facilitation of intentional or accidental harvest; and
- Creation of additional development, which further degrades habitat quality.

Indicator 6.8.6 includes requirements to manage *roads** through all stages of their life cycle, including development, use and maintenance, *abandonment** and reclamation.

Caribou and other wide-ranging species use forests at scales that transcend the size of *Forest Management Units**. This poses a significant challenge for managers of certified forests as the fate of caribou and other wide-ranging species on their forest lands is affected by activities undertaken and decisions made beyond the boundaries of their forests. Indicator 6.8.7 attempts to address this problem by requiring that The Organization work within their *sphere of influence** to facilitate landscape-scale management.

What about Mountain Caribou?

Indicator 6.4.5 specifically addresses boreal caribou, and so it is reasonable to ask why comparable attention is not provided for the mountain caribou ecotype of woodland caribou. The answer is that the ecology of mountain caribou is more complex, with more unknowns. A calibrated relationship between the extent of *cumulative disturbance** and caribou recruitment, which provides the basis for the Federal Recovery Strategy for boreal caribou and which provides the basis for a 'neat' Indicator for boreal caribou does not exist for mountain caribou.

Mountain caribou are divided into two types: northern and southern, with more than 70 ranges, or herds, for both types (and 3 population groups of southern mountain caribou). There are substantial differences between the population groups and herds in their patterns of altitudinal migration, use of high-altitude alpine habitats and low-altitude forest habitat. Matrix habitat, which provides refuge from predation, is recognized as a key component of their ecology particularly for southern mountain caribou, and is recognized as *critical habitat** in the Federal Recovery Strategy for that population (Environment Canada 2014). Given this complexity, it was impractical to provide relatively precise direction for managing mountain caribou in a single Indicator, or to add it to the direction for boreal caribou that exists in Indicator 6.4.5. However, this does not mean that protection for mountain caribou is absent from the Standard. There are several Indicators that address ecological values and management actions that are important in the stewardship of mountain caribou - and other *species at risk** - including the following:

- Indicator 6.4.2 addresses planning for *species at risk**;
- Indicators 6.4.3 and 6.4.4 address implementation of plans and use of a precautionary approach;
- Indicators 6.8.3 and 6.8.4 address management of forest patches;
- Indicator 6.8.5 addresses maintenance of *connectivity**; and
- Indicator 6.8.6 addresses access management.

In addition, mountain caribou should be designated as a High Conservation Value due to its status as a *species at risk**, and so the requirements of Principle 9 will apply.

Annex H Delineation of *Intact Forest Landscapes**

The original Interim Guidance for the Delineation of *Intact Forest Landscapes** (2017) was based on 2 years of discussions and testing with companies in addition to input from technical *experts**. This methodology has been adopted into the Standard to support implementation of the requirements introduced in response to Motion 23/2022.

'Delineation' as it is used in this Annex, refers to the precise demarcation of an *Intact Forest Landscape (IFL)** - in other words, defining its boundary lines on a map. Several considerations need to be addressed for an *IFL** to be identified on a map; constraints regarding size, shape, proximity to anthropogenic disturbances, etc., are provided in Table 1 below.

The Organization should identify all *IFLs** that are located entirely within or overlapping the Management Unit based on the *IFL** maps published at www.globalforestwatch.org as of January 1, 2017.

The Organization may correct the boundaries of the *IFL** to exclude areas which, on January 1, 2017, did not meet the requirements listed in Table 1, by using *best available information**, including:

*Expert** knowledge and *peer review** (e.g. Global Forest Watch Canada (GFW); HCV Network; WWF; WRI);

On-the-ground truthing.

For any areas excluded from the *IFL** maps published at GFW as of January 1, 2017, specific evidence for each exclusion must be provided as justification.

Table 1. Criteria for delineating *IFLs**.

Descriptor	Direction	Application Notes
Base Size and Contiguous Patches	The minimum size for <i>IFLs</i> * is 50,000 ha.	All <i>IFLs</i>* greater than 50,000 ha must be identified. ○ This includes <i>IFLs</i>* wholly in the Management Unit (MU) and <i>IFLs</i>* that cross MU boundaries. ○ For <i>IFLs</i>* partially within the MU, the entire extent of the <i>IFL</i>* (i.e. including portions outside of the MU) must be identified.
Minimum Width	The minimum width of an <i>IFL</i> * is 10 km as measured by one 10 km diameter circle that is entirely within its boundaries.	The circle needs to fit in only one location within the prospective <i>IFL</i> *. This will eliminate <i>IFLs</i> * that are all narrow corridors and have no main body.
Bottlenecks	Corridors or appendages to the <i>IFL</i> * must be at least 2 km wide.	Bottlenecks are constrictions of an intact area to a width of less than 2 km. The <i>IFL</i> * should not include any portions that are less than this width.

Descriptor	Direction	Application Notes
Buffers around anthropogenic features	Notable anthropogenic features (including most <i>roads*</i>) are to be buffered by 1 km. <i>Cutblocks*</i> are to be buffered by 500 m.	Notable anthropogenic features include: ○ <i>Roads*</i> ≥ 5 m ○ highways ○ railways ○ wide utility corridors ○ pipelines ○ buildings ○ settlements Where there are <i>roads*</i> ≥ 5 m wide within <i>cutblocks*</i>, the extent of the buffer into to forest should be the farthest extent of either the <i>road*</i> buffer or the <i>cutblock*</i> buffer. Buffers should not be applied around: ○ snowmobile or ATV trails ○ canoe routes or portages ○ hiking trails ○ <i>Roads*</i> < 5 m wide
Non-forest terrestrial communities	<i>IFLs*</i> may contain up to 50% non-forest terrestrial and wetland areas as part of a broader ecosystem, including: ○ wetlands –bogs, fens, marshes; ○ grasslands, meadows, scrub; and ○ bare rock.	Areas of non-forest vegetated communities are typically included in definitions of <i>IFL*</i> because they play a strong role in the function and character of the landscape. The amount of non-forest that may be included in <i>IFLs*</i> is limited to 50% of the <i>IFL*</i> area.

Descriptor	Direction	Application Notes
Open Water	Open water is to be included in the <i>IFL</i> * up to 500 m from shore.	Expanses of open water should be included as part of an <i>IFL</i> * provided that the <i>IFL</i> * boundary does not extend more than 500 m from the shoreline. These areas comprise both inclusions within a vegetated area and extensions beyond a vegetated area such as those occurring at the shore of a large lake.
Natural Disturbances	Natural disturbance (wildfire, blow down, insect infestation) are not to be excluded from <i>IFLs</i> *.	Areas that have experienced natural disturbance are to be included in <i>IFLs</i> * provided they are part of a land base that meets all the other requirements (i.e. buffers, minimum width, bottlenecks).
<i>Protected Areas</i>*	<i>Protected areas</i> * are not to be excluded from <i>IFLs</i> *.	All considerations included in this document regarding the identification of <i>IFLs</i> * should be applied to existing legally <i>protected areas</i> *. Where these areas abut other portions of the MU, the total area to be considered for possible designation as <i>IFL</i> * includes the <i>protected areas</i> *.

Annex I Glossary of terms

This Glossary includes internationally accepted definitions whenever possible. These sources include, for instance, the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO), the Convention on Biological Diversity (1992), the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005) as well as definitions from online glossaries as provided on the websites of the World Conservation Union (IUCN), the International Labour Organization (ILO) and the Invasive Alien Species Programme of the Convention on Biological Diversity. When other sources have been used, they are referenced accordingly.

The term 'based on' means that a definition was adapted from an existing definition as provided in an international source.

Words used in this Standard, if not defined in this Glossary or other normative FSC documents, are used as defined in the Shorter Oxford English Dictionary or the Concise Oxford Dictionary.

Adaptive management: A systematic process of continually improving management policies and practices by learning from the outcomes of existing measures (Source: Based on World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Affected stakeholder: Any person, group of persons or entity that is or is likely to be subject to the effects of the activities of a Management Unit. Examples include, but are not restricted to (for example in the case of downstream landowners), persons, groups of persons or entities located in the neighbourhood of the Management Unit. The following are examples of affected stakeholders:

- *Local communities**
- Indigenous Peoples
- *Workers**
- Forest dwellers
- Neighbors
- Downstream landowners
- Local processors
- Local businesses
- Tenure and use rights holders, including landowners
- Organizations authorized or known to act on behalf of affected stakeholders, for example social and environmental NGOs, labor unions, etc.

(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)

Age-class: A distinct group of trees or portion of the growing stock of a forest recognized based on similar age or similar successional stage (Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004).

Alien species: A species, subspecies or lower taxon, introduced outside its natural past or present distribution; includes any part, gametes, seeds, eggs, or propagules of such species that might survive and subsequently reproduce (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), Invasive Alien Species Programme. Glossary of Terms as provided on CBD website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Ancient forest: Forests which:

- have not undergone any significant *industrial activity**;
- are naturally regenerated;
- contain trees of size, age and spacing which vary widely;

- contain densities of dead standing trees (snags) and fallen trees that are greater than in younger forests;
- contain trees that are large for the species and site combination;
- contain canopies with many openings;
- are typically small relative to the ecosystems in which they exist; and
- are at the extreme end of the normal natural disturbance cycle.

(Source: From a variety of sources, including FAO Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations). 2002. Proceedings: Expert Meeting on Harmonizing forest-related definitions for use by various stakeholders. Rome, 22-25 Jan. 2002. <http://www.fao.org/docrep/005/Y4171E/Y4171E34.htm>; and Grumbine, R.E. 1993. Ghost Bears: Exploring the Biodiversity Crisis. Island Press. Washington D.C.

Applicable law: Means applicable to The Organization as a legal person or business enterprise in or for the benefit of the Management Unit and those laws which affect the implementation of the FSC Principles and Criteria. This includes any combination of statutory law (Parliamentary-approved) and case law (court interpretations), subsidiary regulations, associated administrative procedures, and the national constitution (if present) which invariably takes legal precedence over all other legal instruments (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Aquifer: A formation, group of formations, or part of a formation that contains sufficient saturated permeable material to yield significant quantities of water to wells and springs for that unit to have economic value as a source of water in that region (Source: Gratzfeld, J. (editor) 2003. Extractive industries in arid and semi-arid zones. IUCN Environmental Management Series No. 1.111 p.) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Area of ecological influence: The entire area encompassed by ecological units (for example *ecodistricts**, biogeoclimatic zones) that occur at least partly within the Management Unit. Identification of the area of ecological influence should consider the scale of the Management Unit and the ecological qualities of the landscape within which the Management Unit is located. The area of ecological influence should be based on an existing ecological classification system in use in the Management Unit's province or region (Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel).

Best available information: Data, facts, documents, *expert** opinions, and results of field surveys or consultations with stakeholders and *engagement** with Indigenous Peoples that are most credible, accurate, complete, and/or pertinent and that can be obtained through reasonable effort and cost, subject to the scale and intensity of the *management activities** and the Precautionary Approach (Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Best efforts: Persistent and sincere attempts by The Organization to address a requirement. Best efforts are not always met with success, but to address the Indicators' requirements for best efforts, evidence must be presented that continuing efforts by various means have been attempted (Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel).

Best management practice: Best management practices (BMPs) are methods or techniques based on known science found to be the most effective and practical and that, if followed, should meet the requirements of Indicators or achieve objectives (Source: Adapted from BC Ministry of the Environment [2015] and Business Dictionary [2015]).

Binding agreement: A deal or pact, written or not, which is compulsory to its signatories and enforceable by law. Parties involved in the agreement do so freely and accept it voluntarily (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Biological diversity: The variability among living organisms from all sources including, inter alia, terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems and the ecological complexes of which they are a part;

this includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity 1992, Article 2) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Biological control agents: Organisms used to eliminate or regulate the population of other organisms (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0, based on FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 and World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website).

Caribou range: The geographic area occupied by a local population of boreal or mountain caribou as identified by the Federal Recovery Strategy or action plans for boreal woodland caribou (Environment Canada, 2012), or the Federal Recovery Strategy for southern mountain caribou (Environment Canada, 2014), or updates to those strategies or revised areas identified by provincial resource management agencies. (Addition; Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel).

Collective rights: Shared or joint rights held by a *local community** and that are not the mere aggregation of rights held individually by members of the group (Source: FSC Canada Standard Development Group, based on Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy).

Community forest: Any forestry operation managed by a local government, community group, First Nation or community-held corporation for the benefit of the entire community, in which profits are cycled back into the community, and has a total area equal to or under 80,000 hectares (Source: Adapted from BC Community Forest Association definition).

Complaint: The expression of dissatisfaction or concern by any person or organization presented to The Organization, relating to its *management activities** or its conformity with the FSC Principles and Criteria, where a response is expected (Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0 definition of *dispute** and Merriam-Webster).

Confidential information: Private facts, data and content that, if made publicly available, might put at risk The Organization, its business interests or its relationships with stakeholders, clients and competitors (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Conflict of interest: Situation in which a party has an actual or perceived interest that gives, or could have the appearance of giving, that party an incentive for personal, organizational, or professional gain, such that the party's interest could conflict, or be perceived to conflict with, the conduct of an impartial and objective certification process (Source: FSC-STD-20-001 V4-0).

Connectivity: The degree to which habitat patches or environments are linked by single or multiple corridors or broad expanses of habitat. Connectivity recognizes the need for habitats to address several kinds of movements: 1) daily movements among habitat patches; 2) migrations/movement between seasonal ranges/use areas; and 3) dispersal movements of young animals. Conditions necessary for connectivity and its effectiveness will depend on the specific purpose of the connectivity and the requirements of species or ecosystems considered (Source: Adapted from FSC Regional Certification Standards for British Columbia 2005).

Consensus: General agreement, characterized by the absence of sustained opposition to substantial issues by any important part of the concerned interests and by a process that involves seeking to consider the views of all parties concerned and to reconcile any conflicting arguments. NOTE: Consensus need not imply unanimity (Source FSC-PRO-01-003 V3-1).

Conservation/Protection: These words are used interchangeably when referring to *management activities** designed to maintain the identified environmental or cultural values in existence *long-term**. *Management activities** may range from zero or minimal interventions to a specified range of appropriate interventions and activities designed to maintain, or compatible with maintaining, these identified values (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Conservation Areas Network: Those portions of the Management Unit and the *area of ecological influence** for which conservation is the primary and, in some circumstances, exclusive objective. For

public lands, the Conservation Areas Network is the sum of *protected areas** and *designated conservation lands**. For private lands, the Conservation Areas Network is the sum of *protected areas**, *designated conservation lands** and *secondary conservation lands** (Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Conservation zones [and protection areas]: Defined areas that are designated and managed primarily to safeguard species, habitats, ecosystems, natural features or other site-specific values because of their natural environmental or cultural values, or for purposes of monitoring, evaluation or research, not necessarily excluding other *management activities**. For the purposes of the Principles and Criteria, these terms are used interchangeably, without implying that one always has a higher degree of conservation or protection than the other (Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Core Area: The portion of each *Intact Forest Landscape** within the Management Unit designated to contain the most important cultural and ecological values. Core areas are managed to exclude *industrial activity** (Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V2-1).

Criterion (pl. Criteria): A means of judging if a Principle (of forest stewardship) has been fulfilled (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0).

Critical: The concept of criticality or fundamentality in Principle 9 and HCVs relates to irreplaceability and to cases where loss or major damage to this HCV would cause serious prejudice or suffering to affected stakeholders. An ecosystem service is critical (HCV 4) where a disruption of that service is likely to cause, or threaten, severe negative impacts on the welfare, health or survival of *local communities**, on the environment, on HCVs, or on the function of significant infrastructure, such as *roads**, dams, buildings etc. The notion of criticality here refers to the importance and risk for natural resources and environmental and socio-economic values (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Critical habitat: In the context of Indicator 6.4.5, critical habitat for boreal caribou is identified as: i) the area within the boundary of each boreal *caribou range** that provides an overall ecological condition that will allow for an ongoing recruitment and retirement cycle of habitat, which maintains a perpetual state of a minimum of 65% of the area as *undisturbed habitat**; and ii) biophysical attributes required by boreal caribou to carry out life processes. The precise location of the 65% *undisturbed habitat** within the range will vary over time (Source: Environment Canada 2011). For a more complete definition refer to Environment Canada (2011).

Crown land: In Canada, public lands are often referred as Crown lands. The federal and provincial/territorial governments have specific responsibilities regarding public lands so these lands can be administered differently in each province (Source: FSC Canada).

Culturally appropriate [mechanisms]: Means/approaches for outreach to target groups that are in harmony with the customs, values, sensitivities, and ways of life of the target audience (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Cumulative disturbance: As used in Indicator 6.4.5, cumulative disturbance is the proportion of a range with combined anthropogenic and natural disturbances less than a benchmark age. A commonly used benchmark age has been 40 years, however there is uncertainty about the broad applicability of this benchmark. Different boreal forest regions are characterized by varying disturbance ecologies and there is also variability in the relationship between the level of cumulative disturbance and caribou productivity. A benchmark of 40 years is typically used in the absence of an empirical basis for another benchmark (Source: Adapted from Environment Canada 2011).

Customary law: Interrelated sets of customary rights may be recognized as customary law. In some jurisdictions, customary law is equivalent to statutory law, within its defined area of competence and may replace the statutory law for defined ethnic or other social groups. In some jurisdictions customary law complements statutory law and is applied in specified circumstances (Source: Based on N.L. Peluso and P. Vandergeest. 2001. Genealogies of the political forest and customary rights in Indonesia, Malaysia and Thailand, *Journal of Asian Studies* 60(3):761–812) (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Customary rights: Rights which result from a long series of habitual or customary actions, constantly repeated, which have, by such repetition and by uninterrupted acquiescence, acquired the force of a law within a geographical or sociological unit (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0).

Cutblock: A contiguous area of forest that has been harvested except for individual trees and patches left either for silvicultural purposes or to provide ecological benefits (Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel).

Deactivation/Abandonment: Used in reference to access road management. Deactivation and abandonment are undertaken with the intent of rendering roads inaccessible or impassable to motorized vehicles. Deactivation is an active process involving physical manipulation of road surfaces or water crossings, whereas abandonment is a passive process involving cessation of maintenance so that the road surface eventually falls into disrepair or is naturally revegetated (Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel).

Designated conservation lands: Areas identified through the process of addressing the requirements of Criterion 6.5 that are to be managed through the exclusion of *forest management activities** (except in rare instances when necessary to achieve objectives associated with *restoration** or maintenance of natural conditions) in recognition of their ecological and/or cultural values (Source: FSC Canada Standard Development Group).

Dispute. Represent a formal disagreement, after the initial attempts to resolve a *complaint** have not been achieved (Source: FSC Canada, based on Merriam-Webster).

Dispute of substantial duration: *Dispute** that continues for more than twice as long as the predefined timelines in the FSC System (this is, for more than 6 months after receiving the *complaint**, based on FSC-STD-20-001) (Sources: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Dispute of substantial magnitude: A dispute of substantial magnitude is a *dispute** that involves one or more of the following:

- Where the negative impact of *management activities** on *local communities** or on Indigenous Peoples legal or customary rights is of such a scale that it cannot be reversed or mitigated;
- Physical violence;
- Significant destruction of property;
- Presence of law enforcement or military bodies;
- Acts of intimidation against *workers** and stakeholders.
- A *dispute** can become of substantial magnitude if it is of substantial duration, implies a significant number of interests and has a significant negative impact to the forest resource / value.

(Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

Economic viability: The capability of developing and surviving as a relatively independent social, economic or political unit. Economic viability may require but is not synonymous with profitability (Source: Based on the definition provided on the website of the European Environment Agency) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Ecoregion/ Ecodistrict: Large unit of land or water containing a geographically distinct assemblage of species, natural communities, and environmental conditions (Source: WWF Global 200. <https://www.worldwildlife.org/biomes>).

Ecosystem: A dynamic complex of plant, animal and micro-organism communities and their non-living environment interacting as a functional unit (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity 1992, Article 2) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Ecosystem function: An intrinsic ecosystem characteristic related to the set of conditions and processes whereby an ecosystem maintains its integrity (such as primary productivity, food chain, biogeochemical cycles). Ecosystem functions include such processes as decomposition, production, nutrient cycling, and fluxes of nutrients and energy. For FSC purposes, this definition includes ecological and evolutionary processes such as gene flow and disturbance regimes, regeneration cycles and ecological seral development (succession) stages (Source: Based on R. Hassan, R. Scholes and N. Ash. 2005. Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Synthesis. The Millennium Ecosystem Assessment Series. Island Press, Washington DC; and R.F. Noss. 1990. Indicators for monitoring biodiversity: a hierarchical approach. Conservation Biology 4(4):355–364) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Ecosystem integrity: A broad concept often equated with ecosystem health; this term generally includes the notions of containing a complete suite of naturally functioning ecological processes across all scales consistent with the size of the ecosystem, complete, or nearly complete representation of naturally occurring species, minimally impaired by human-caused stresses (Source: adapted from King, A.W. 1993. Considerations of scale and hierarchy. In S. Woodley, J. Kay, and G. Francis. Ecological Integrity and the Management of Ecosystems, 19-46. St. Lucie Press. Delray Beach, FL.).

Ecosystem services: The benefits people obtain from ecosystems. These include:

- provisioning services, such as food, forest products and water;
- regulating services, such as regulation of floods, drought, land degradation, air quality, climate and disease;
- supporting services, such as soil formation and nutrient cycling; and
- cultural services and cultural values, such as recreational, spiritual, religious and other non-material benefits.

(Source: Based on R. Hassan, R. Scholes and N. Ash. 2005. Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Synthesis. The Millennium Ecosystem Assessment Series. Island Press, Washington DC) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

Efficient collaborative process: As used in Indicator 6.4.5c and 9.2.4b, involves circumstances in which The Organization engages with Indigenous Peoples and affected and interested stakeholders to determine a conservation approach. The process is collaborative in that the parties work together to achieve an agreed-upon end point. The process is efficient in that it recognizes the need for timeliness to address The Organization's FSC obligations and the urgency associated with identifying conservation-oriented caribou management strategies or a balanced outcome for the protection of *Intact Forest Landscapes** (Source: FSC Canada).

Employee: Anyone who is on the payroll of a specific business, in a full-time, part-time or seasonal capacity, for whom the resource manager withholds and remits taxes in accordance with federal and provincial laws (Source: Adapted from FSC Canada Great Lakes St. Lawrence Standard 2010).

Endemic: A species or subspecies that is restricted to a defined geographical area (Source: FSC Canada HCV Sub-committee).

Enduring feature: A landscape element or unit within a natural region characterized by relatively uniform origin of surficial material, texture of surficial material and topography (Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004).

Engagement: The process by which The Organization communicates, consults and/or provides for the participation of interested and/or affected stakeholders and Indigenous Peoples, ensuring that their concerns, desires, expectations, needs, rights and opportunities are considered in the establishment, implementation and updating of the management plan (Source: Adapted from FSC-SDT-01-001 V5-0).

Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA): Systematic process used to identify potential environmental and social impacts of proposed projects, to evaluate alternative approaches, and to design and incorporate appropriate prevention, mitigation, management and monitoring measures. The assessment methodologies used must be scientifically sound. The scope of an assessment is typically outlined at the start of the project so that the project has some well-defined boundaries. These may include physical, temporal, political, cultural and financial limits within the project mandate. Aspects of the environment typically included in assessments are site impacts on soil, and site attributes, community impacts on local wildlife and ecological communities, and landscape impacts on the broader forest ecosystem (Source: based on Environmental impact assessment, guidelines for FAO field projects. Food and agriculture organization of the United Nations (FAO). Rome, STD-01-001 V5-0) (FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Environmental values: The following set of elements of the biophysical and human environment:

- ecosystem functions (including carbon sequestration and storage);
- biological diversity;
- water resources;
- soils;
- atmosphere;
- landscape values (including cultural and spiritual values).

The actual worth attributed to these elements depends on human and societal perceptions.

(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)

Ephemeral stream: A stream that flows briefly only in direct response to precipitation in the immediate locality and whose channel is always above the water table (Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004).

Expert:

- 1) An individual whose knowledge or skill is specialized and profound as the result of much practical or academic experience.
- 2) A recognized authority on a topic by virtue of the body of relevant material published on the topic, their stature within the professional community, and the broadly recognized accumulated related experience.
- 3) An individual who possess a wealth of experience on a topic such as may be accumulated through practical means including the accumulation of traditional knowledge (Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004).

Externalities: The positive and negative impacts of activities on stakeholders that are not directly involved in those activities, or on a natural resource or the environment, which do not usually enter standard cost accounting systems, such that the market prices of the products of those activities do not reflect the full costs or benefits (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Fair compensation: An action or process (which may include remuneration) offered to redress a harm that is proportionate to the magnitude and type of harm experienced or services rendered by another party to reconcile the harm (Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Fertilizer: Mineral or organic substances, most commonly N, P₂O₅ and K₂O, which are applied to soil for enhancing plant growth (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Focal species: Species whose requirements for persistence define the attributes that must be present if that landscape is to meet the requirements of the species that occur there (Source: Lambeck, R., J. 1997).

Focal Species: A multi-species Umbrella for Nature Conservation. Conservation Biology vol. 11 (4): 849-856) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Forest: A tract of land dominated by trees (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0. Derived from FSC Guidelines for Certification Bodies, Scope of Forest Certification, Section 2.1 first published in 1998, and revised as FSC-GUI-20-200 in 2005, and revised again in 2010 as FSC-DIR-20-007 FSC Directive on Forest Management Evaluations, ADVICE-20-007-01) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Forest Management activities: see *Management activities**.

Forest Management Unit: see Management Unit.

Forest type: Forest type is a group of forest ecosystems of generally similar composition that can be readily differentiated from other such groups by their tree and under-canopy species composition, productivity and/or crown closure (Source: Convention on Biological diversity).

Fragmentation: The process of dividing habitats into smaller patches, which results in the loss of original habitat, loss in *connectivity**, reduction in patch size, and increasing isolation of patches. *Fragmentation** is considered to be one of the single most important factors leading to loss of native species, especially in forested landscapes, and one of the primary causes of the present extinction crisis. In reference to *Intact Forest Landscapes**, the *fragmentation** of concern is understood to be that caused by human industrial activities (Source: Adapted from: Gerald E. Heilman, Jr. James R. Strittholt Nicholas C. Slosser Dominick A. Dellasala, BioScience (2002) 52 (5): 411-422).

Free, Prior, and Informed Consent (FPIC): A legal condition whereby a person or community can be said to have given consent to an action prior to its commencement, based upon a clear appreciation and understanding of the facts, implications and future consequences of that action, and the possession of all relevant facts at the time when consent is given. *Free, Prior and Informed Consent* includes the right to grant, modify, withhold or withdraw approval.

(Source: Based on the Preliminary working paper on the principle of *Free, Prior and Informed Consent* of Indigenous Peoples (...) (E/CN.4/Sub.2/AC.4/2004/4 8 July 2004) of the 22nd Session of the United Nations Commission on Human Rights, Sub-commission on the Promotion and Protection of Human Rights, Working Group on Indigenous Populations, 19–23 July 2004) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

Gender equality: Gender equality or gender equity means that women and men have equal conditions for realizing their full human rights and for contributing to, and benefiting from, economic, social, cultural and political development.

(Source: Adapted from FAO, IFAD and ILO workshop on 'Gaps, trends and current research in gender dimensions of agricultural and rural employment: differentiated pathways out of poverty', Rome, 31 March to 2 April 2009) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Genetically modified organism: An organism in which the genetic material has been altered in a way that does not occur naturally by mating and/or natural recombination (Source: Based on FSC-POL-30-602 FSC Interpretation on GMO [Genetically Modified Organisms]) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Genotype: The genetic constitution of an organism (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5- 0).

Good faith: The principle of good faith implies that the parties make every effort to reach an agreement, conduct genuine and constructive negotiations, avoid delays in negotiations, respect concluded agreements, and give sufficient time to discuss and settle *disputes** (Source: FSC Policy Motion 40/2017).

Grassland: Land covered with herbaceous plants with less than 10% tree and shrub cover (Source: UNEP, cited in FAO. 2002. Second Expert Meeting on Harmonizing Forest-Related Definitions for use by various stakeholders) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Group entity: The group entity is the entity representing the forest properties that constitute a group for FSC forest management certification. The group entity applies for group certification and finally holds the

forest management certificate. The group entity is responsible to the certification body for ensuring that the requirements of the FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship are met in all forest properties participating in the group. The group entity may be an individual, e.g. a resource manager, a cooperative body, an owner association, or other similar legal entity (Source: FSC-STD-30-005).

Habitat: The place or type of site where an organism or population occurs (Source: Based on the Convention on Biological Diversity, Article 2) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Habitat features: Forest *stand** attributes and structures, including but not limited to:

- Old commercial and non-commercial trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy;
- Rare plant communities;
- Trees with special ecological value;
- Vertical and horizontal complexity;
- Standing dead trees;
- Dead fallen wood;
- Forest openings attributable to natural disturbances;
- Nesting sites;
- Small wetlands, bogs, fens;
- Ponds;
- Areas for procreation;
- Areas for feeding and shelter, including seasonal cycles of breeding;
- Areas for migration;
- Areas for hibernation.

(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

Harvest area: A forest area in which harvesting operations have taken place. A harvest area often consists of more than one *cutblock**. *Cutblocks** within a harvest area are usually close enough so that they are planned and implemented as part of the same forestry operation. *Cutblocks** within a harvest area are generally separated by patches or linear stretches of contiguous forest so that there is not an uninterrupted cut area between the *cutblocks** (Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel).

High Conservation Value (HCV): Any of the following values:

- **HCV 1:** Species Diversity. Concentrations of biological diversity including endemic species, and rare, threatened or endangered species, that are significant at global, regional or national levels.
- **HCV 2:** Landscape-level ecosystems and mosaics. *Intact Forest Landscapes**, large landscape-level ecosystems and ecosystem mosaics that are significant at global, regional or national levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.
- **HCV 3:** Ecosystems and habitats. Rare, threatened, or endangered ecosystems, habitats or refugia.
- **HCV 4:** Critical ecosystem services. Basic ecosystem services in critical situations, including protection of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.

- **HCV 5:** Community needs. Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of *local communities** or Indigenous Peoples (for example for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water), identified through *engagement** with these communities or Indigenous Peoples.
- **HCV 6:** Cultural values. Sites, resources, habitats and landscapes of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of critical cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of *local communities** or Indigenous Peoples, identified through *engagement** with these *local communities** or Indigenous Peoples.

(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0, based on FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)

High Conservation Value assessment: The complete process of identifying High Conservation Values and High Conservation Value areas and developing management and monitoring plans to ensure that the values identified are maintained or enhanced. (Source: Adapted from Stewart et al. 2008).

High Conservation Value areas: Zones and physical spaces which possess and/or are needed for the existence and maintenance of identified High Conservation Values (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

High grading: High grading is a tree removal practice in which only the best quality, most valuable timber trees are removed, often without regenerating new tree seedlings or removing the remaining poor quality and suppressed understory trees and, in doing so, degrading the ecological health and commercial value of the forest. High grading *stands** as a counterpoint to sustainable resource management (Source: based on Glossary of Forest Management Terms. North Carolina Division of Forest Resources. March 2009) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Hydrologic features: Water-related features visible at the land surface, such as stream channels, lakes, springs, seepage zones and wetlands (Source: FSC Canada BC Standard).

Independent expert: An *expert** who is not employed by The Organization or government and has no apparent conflict of interest (Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel).

Indicator: A quantitative or qualitative variable which can be measured or described, and which provides a means of judging whether a Management Unit complies with the requirements of an FSC Criterion. Indicators and the associated thresholds thereby define the requirements for responsible forest management at the level of the Management Unit and are the primary basis of forest evaluation (Source: FSC-STD-01-002 V1-0).

Indigenous Cultural Landscapes: Indigenous Cultural Landscapes are living landscapes to which Indigenous Peoples attribute environmental, social, cultural and economic value because of their enduring relationship with the land, water, fauna, flora and spirits and their present and future importance to their cultural identity. An Indigenous Cultural Landscape is characterized by features that have been maintained through *long-term** interactions based on land-care knowledge, and adaptive livelihood practices. They are landscapes over which Indigenous Peoples exercise responsibility for stewardship (Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V2-1).

Indigenous Peoples: The following criteria may be used to identify Indigenous Peoples:

- The key characteristic or criterion is self-identification as Indigenous Peoples at the individual level and acceptance by the community as their member;
- Historical continuity with pre-colonial and/or pre-settler societies;
- Strong link to territories and surrounding natural resources;
- Distinct social, economic or political systems;
- Distinct language, culture and beliefs;
- Form non-dominant groups of society;

- Resolve to maintain and reproduce their ancestral environments and systems as distinctive peoples and communities.

(Source: Adapted from United Nations Permanent Forum on Indigenous, Factsheet 'Who are Indigenous Peoples' October 2007; United Nations Development Group, 'Guidelines on Indigenous Peoples' Issues' United Nations 2009, United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples, 13 September 2007) (Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

Industrial Activity: Industrial forest and resource *management activities** such as *road** building, mining, dams, urban development and timber harvesting (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V2-1).

Infrastructure: In the context of forest management, *roads**, bridges, culverts, log landings, quarries, impoundments, buildings and other structures required while implementing the management plan (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Intact Forest Landscape (IFL): A territory within today's global extent of forest cover which contains forest and non-forest ecosystems minimally influenced by human economic activity, with an area of at least 500 km² (50,000 ha) and a minimal width of 10 km (measured as the diameter of a circle that is entirely inscribed within the boundaries of the territory).

(Source: Intact Forests / Global Forest Watch. Glossary definition as provided on Intact Forest website. 2006-2014) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0) (Methodology for delineating IFLs in Canada is provided in Annex H).

Intellectual property: Practices as well as knowledge, innovations and other creations of the mind (Source: Based on the Convention on Biological Diversity, Article 8(j); and World Intellectual Property Organization. What is Intellectual Property? WIPO Publication No. 450[E]) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Intensity: A measure of the force, severity or strength of a management activity or other occurrence affecting the nature of the activity's impacts (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0 V1-0).

Interested stakeholder: Any person, group of persons, or entity that has shown an interest, or is known to have an interest, in the activities of a Management Unit. The following are examples of interested stakeholders.

- Conservation organizations, for example environmental NGOs;
- Labor (rights) organizations, for example labor unions;
- Human rights organizations, for example social NGOs;
- Local development projects;
- Local governments;
- National government departments functioning in the region;
- FSC National Offices;
- *Experts** on specific issues, for example High Conservation Values.

(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)

Intermittent stream: A stream in contact with the groundwater table that flows only at certain times of year, such as when the groundwater table is high and/or when it receives water from springs or from surface areas. Also known as a seasonal stream (Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004).

Internationally accepted scientific protocol: A predefined science-based procedure which is either published by an international scientific network or union, or referenced frequently in the international scientific literature (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Interquartile range: A measure of variability based on dividing a data set into quartiles that defines the middle 50% of values in a distribution (Source: Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources 2014).

Invasive species: Species that are rapidly expanding outside of their native range. Invasive species can alter ecological relationships among native species and can affect ecosystem function and human health (Source: Based on World Conservation Union [IUCN]. Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Lands and territories: For the purposes of the Principles and Criteria these are lands or territories that Indigenous Peoples or *local communities** have traditionally owned, or customarily used or occupied, and where access to natural resources is vital to the sustainability of their cultures and livelihoods (Source: Based on World Bank safeguard OP 4.10 Indigenous Peoples, section 16 (a). July 2005.) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Landscape: A geographical mosaic composed of interacting ecosystems resulting from the influence of geological, topographical, soil, climatic, biotic and human interactions in a given area (Source: Based on World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Landscape values: Landscape values can be visualized as layers of human perceptions overlaid on the physical landscape. Some landscape values, like economic, recreation, subsistence value or visual quality are closely related to physical landscape attributes. Other landscape values, such as intrinsic or spiritual value are more symbolic in character and are influenced more by individual perception or social construction than physical landscape attributes (Source: Based on website of the Landscape Value Institute) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Legal: In accordance with primary legislation (national or local laws) or secondary legislation (subsidiary regulations, decrees, orders, etc.). Legal also includes rule-based decisions made by legally competent agencies where such decisions flow directly and logically from the laws and regulations. Decisions made by legally competent agencies may not be legal if they do not flow directly and logically from the laws and regulations and if they are not rule-based but use administrative discretion (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Legally competent: Mandated in law to perform a certain function (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Legal registration: National or local legal license or set of permissions to operate as an enterprise, with rights to buy and sell products and/or services commercially. The license or permissions can apply to an individual, a privately-owned enterprise or a publicly owned corporate entity. The rights to buy and sell products and/or services do not carry the obligation to do so, so legal registration applies also to The Organizations operating a Management Unit without sales of products or services; for example, for unpriced recreation or for conservation of biodiversity or habitat (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Legal status: The way in which the Management Unit is classified according to law. In terms of tenure, it means the category of tenure, such as communal land or leasehold or freehold or State land or government land, etc. If the Management Unit is being converted from one category to another, for example, from State land to communal indigenous land, the status includes the current position in the transition process. In terms of administration, legal status could mean that the land is owned by the nation, and is administered on behalf of the nation by a government department, and is leased by a government Ministry to a private sector operator through a concession (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Living wage: The remuneration received for a standard work week by a worker in a particular place that sufficient to afford a decent standard of living for the worker and her or his family. Elements of a decent standard of living include food, water, housing, education, health care, transport, clothing, and other essential needs including provision for unexpected events (Source: A Shared Approach to a Living Wage. ISEAL Living Wage Group. November 2013) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Local communities: (Human) Communities that are in or adjacent to the Management Unit, and also those that are close enough to have a significant impact on the economy or the environmental values of the Management Unit or to have their economies, *collective rights** or environments values significantly affected by the *forest management activities** on the Management Unit. In Canada, communities to be considered are the ones officially identified as a municipality by the Canada Revenue Agency which list them and shows their qualified donees status under the Income Tax Act (<http://www.cra-arc.gc.ca/chrts-gvng/qlfd-dns/mncplts-eng.html>). The respective provincial lists may be also used (Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Local laws: The whole suite of primary and secondary laws (acts, ordinances, statutes, decrees) which is limited in application to a geographic district within a national territory, as well as secondary regulations, and tertiary administrative procedures (rules/ requirements) that derive their authority directly and explicitly from these primary and secondary laws. Laws derive authority ultimately from the Westphalian concept of sovereignty of the Nation State (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Long-term: For Indicators that refer to long-term or longer-term as a basis for defining when modelled quantitative objectives or targets of Indicators should be achieved, the term means the longest modelling horizon of the existing forest management plan. The term is also used to refer to the time-scale of the forest owner or manager as manifested by the objectives of the management plan, the rate of harvesting, and the commitment to maintain permanent forest cover. The length of time involved will vary according to the context and ecological conditions, and will be a function of how long it takes a given ecosystem to recover its natural structure and composition following harvesting or disturbance, or to produce mature or primary conditions (Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-01-002 V1-0).

Low intensity forest: Forests with a harvesting rate of less than 20% of the mean annual growth in timber, and either an annual harvest or an annual average harvest of less than 5,000 m³ (averaged over the certificate lifetime) (Source: Based on FSC-STD-01-003).

INTENT BOX

Native forests used solely for harvesting non-timber forest products also qualify as low intensity forests regardless of size or intensity.

Plantations of non-timber forest products shall not be considered low intensity *forest Management Units** within the meaning of this Standard.

Management activities*: Any or all operations, processes or procedures associated with managing a forest, including, but not limited to: planning, consultation, harvesting, access construction and maintenance, silvicultural activities (planting, site preparation, tending), monitoring, assessment, and reporting (Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004).

Management objective: Specific management goals, practices, outcomes, and approaches established to achieve the requirements of this Standard (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Management plan: The collection of documents, reports, records and maps that describe, justify and regulate the activities carried out by any manager, staff or organization within or in relation to the Management Unit, including statements of objectives and policies (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Management Unit: A spatial area or areas submitted for FSC certification with clearly defined boundaries managed to a set of explicit *long-term** management objectives which are expressed in a management plan. These areas include:

- all facilities and areas within or adjacent to this spatial area or areas under legal title or management control of, or operated by or on behalf of The Organization, for contributing to the management objectives; and

- all facilities and area(s) outside, and not adjacent to this spatial area or areas and operated by or on behalf of The Organization, solely for contributing to the management objectives.

(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)

Marketable: A product that can be sold or exchanged because one or more buyers exist (Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard, 2004).

Merchantable: A log or tree which meets or exceeds minimum size requirements and contains a proportion of sound wood in excess of minimum requirements, as determined according to applicable scaling (wood measurement) standards (Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard, 2004).

Mutually agreed: The parties undertake obligations to each other to do, or not to do, one or more actions to address legitimate concerns of individuals in a group decision-making process. Evidence of an agreement can be oral or put in writing (and may be referred to as a contract) (Source: FSC Canada, based on <https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/mutual> and <https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/agree>).

National laws: The whole suite of primary and secondary laws (acts, ordinances, statutes, decrees), which is applicable to a national territory, as well as secondary regulations, and tertiary administrative procedures (rules/ requirements) that derive their authority directly and explicitly from these primary and secondary laws (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Native ecosystem: See natural conditions.

Native species: Species, subspecies, or lower taxon, occurring within its natural range (past or present) and dispersal potential (that is, within the range it occupies naturally or could occupy without direct or indirect introduction or care by humans) (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD). Invasive Alien Species Programme. Glossary of Terms as provided on CBD website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Natural conditions: For the purposes of the Principles and Criteria and any applications of *restoration** techniques, terms such as 'more natural conditions', 'native ecosystem' provide for managing sites to favour or *restore** native species and associations of native species that are typical of the locality, and for managing these associations and other environmental values so that they form ecosystems typical of the locality. Further guidelines may be provided in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Natural forest: A forest area with many of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems, such as complexity, structure and biological diversity, including soil characteristics, flora and fauna, in which all or almost all the trees are native species, not classified as plantations.

Natural forest includes the following categories:

- Forest affected by harvesting or other disturbances, in which trees are being or have been regenerated by a combination of natural and artificial regeneration with species typical of natural forests in that site, and where many of the above-ground and below-ground characteristics of the natural forest are still present. In boreal and north temperate forests which are naturally composed of only one or few tree species, a combination of natural and artificial regeneration to regenerate forest of the same native species, with most of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems of that site, is not by itself considered as conversion to plantations;
- Natural forests which are maintained by traditional silvicultural practices including natural or assisted natural regeneration;
- Well-developed secondary or colonizing forest of native species which has regenerated in non-forest areas;
- The definition of natural forest may include areas described as wooded ecosystems, woodland and savannah.

The description of natural forests and their principal characteristics and key elements may be further defined in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards, with appropriate descriptions or examples.

Natural forest does not include land which is not dominated by trees, was previously not forest, and which does not yet contain many of the characteristics and elements of native ecosystems. Young regeneration may be considered natural forest after some years of ecological progression. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may indicate when such areas may be excised from the Management Unit, should be *restored** towards more natural conditions, or may be converted to other land uses.

FSC has not developed quantitative thresholds between different categories of forests in terms of area, density, height, etc. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may provide such thresholds and other guidelines, with appropriate descriptions or examples. Pending such guidance, areas dominated by trees, mainly of native species, may be considered as natural forest.

Thresholds and guidelines may cover areas such as:

- Other vegetation types and non-forest communities and ecosystems included in the Management Unit, including grassland, bushland, wetlands, and open woodlands;
- Very young pioneer or colonizing regeneration in a primary succession on new open sites or abandoned farmland, which does not yet contain many of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems. This may be considered as natural forest through ecological progression after the passage of years;
- Young natural regeneration growing in natural forest areas may be considered as natural forest, even after logging, clear-felling or other disturbances, since many of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems remain, above-ground and below-ground;
- Areas where deforestation and forest degradation have been so severe that they are no longer 'dominated by trees' may be considered as non-forest, when they have very few of the principal above-ground and below-ground characteristics and key elements of natural forests. Such extreme degradation is typically the result of combinations of repeated and excessively heavy logging, grazing, farming, fuelwood collection, hunting, fire, erosion, mining, settlements, infrastructure, etc. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may help to decide when such areas should be excised from the Management Unit, should be *restored** towards more natural conditions, or may be converted to other land uses.

(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)

Natural hazards: disturbances that can present risks to social and environmental values in the Management Unit but that may also comprise important ecosystem functions; examples include drought, flood, fire, landslide, storm, avalanche, etc. (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Near Term: For Indicators which refer to near-term as a basis for defining when aspects of Indicators should be achieved or for the extent of a planning horizon, the term means within the time frame of implementation of operational activities identified in existing management plans. Typically, this is around 5-10 years (Source: FSC Canada *Species at Risk** Technical Expert Panel).

Net expansion: In the context of Indicator 6.4.5, net expansion of forest management within the range (based on *cumulative disturbance**) refers to an increase in cumulative disturbed area. In this context, it is possible to harvest an area of previously unharvested forest after a comparably sized area of disturbed forest has returned to an undisturbed state (that is, after it has been *restored**). Harvesting within an existing *cumulative disturbance** footprint does not result in an expansion in disturbance. In these circumstances, the total area of disturbance would not increase and there would be no net expansion of forest management (Source: FSC Canada *Species at Risk** Technical Expert Panel).

Non-forest land-use: Land-use system, where the land is not dominated by trees (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V2-1 EN).

Non-timber forest products (NTFP): All forest products other than timber derived from the Management Unit (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Normative: In the context of normative requirements, they are the required elements to be demonstrated and met. Conversely, non-normative means elements are not required, but provide information, context and/or guidance to a concept such as an Intent Box (Source: FSC Canada).

Objective: The basic purpose laid down by The Organization for the forest enterprise, including the decision of policy and the choice of means for attaining the purpose (Source: Based on F.C. Osmaston. 1968. The Management of Forests. Hafner, New York; and D.R. Johnston, A.J. Grayson and R.T. Bradley. 1967. Forest Planning. Faber & Faber, London) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Obligatory codes of practice: A manual or handbook or other source of technical instruction which The Organization must implement by law (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Occupational accident: An occurrence arising out of, or during, work which results in fatal or non-fatal injury (Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Occupational disease: Any disease contracted because of an exposure to risk factors arising from work activity (Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Occupational injuries: Any personal injury, disease or death resulting from an occupational accident (Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Old forest: Later stages in forest development which may be distinctive in composition, but are always distinctive in structure from earlier (young and mature) successional stages (Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004).

Organism: Any biological entity capable of replication or of transferring genetic material (Source: Council Directive 90/220/EEC) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

The Organization: The person or entity holding or applying for certification and therefore responsible for demonstrating compliance with the requirements upon which FSC certification is based (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Overlapping tenure holder: A licensee, also known as a third-party licensee, that either:

- holds the right to harvest timber on either all or a defined portion of an area that is licensed to and/or managed by another entity; or
- holds a license for exploitation of another resource (e.g., oil and gas) on a land base also occupied by a timber licensee or managed in part to produce forest products.

(Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)

Peatland: Is constituted by flooded and soggy areas, with large accumulations of organic material, covered by a layer of poor vegetation associated with a certain degree of acidity, and which presents a characteristic amber colour (Source: Aguilar, L. 2001. About Fishermen, Fisherwomen, Oceans and tides. IUCN. San Jose [Costa Rica]) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Peer review: Review by an *independent expert** on the subject being considered. A key part of the peer-review process is documentation by the forest manager of the manner in which the peer review was considered and incorporated into the products being reviewed (Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004).

Pesticide: Any substance or preparation prepared or used in protecting plants or wood or other plant products or human health or livestock or biodiversity from pests; in controlling pests; or in rendering such pests harmless. (This definition includes insecticides, rodenticides, acaricides, molluscicides, larvicides, fungicides and herbicides) (Source: FSC-POL-30-001 FSC Pesticides Policy [2005]).

Plans for species at risk: In this Standard, these plans are documented strategies and procedures for managing *species at risk** and/or their habitats. Plans can consist of a range of documents including those that have been developed and approved in accordance with federal or provincial legislation, sometimes called “Action Plans” or “Recovery Strategies”. Plans can also include documents written by *qualified specialists** specifically to direct management in the *Forest Management Unit** and included in forest management plans. Plans written specifically for the *Forest Management Unit** should not conflict with approved Actions Plans or Recovery Strategies. Plans written specifically for the Management Unit are not intended to replicate the detail and scope of Action Plans or Recovery Strategies, but simply to outline the ways in which the manager is taking a precautionary approach to mitigating the impact of its activities on the species and/or allowing for its recovery. Measures may involve habitat protection, conservation zones, seasonal closures, etc. They will not necessarily require a *stand**-alone plan or strategy for each species, and may be reflected in measures to implement other requirements of this Standard (Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004).

Plantation: A forest area established by planting or sowing with using either alien or native species, often with one or few species, regular spacing and even ages, and which lacks most of the principal characteristics and key elements of natural forests. The description of plantations may be further defined in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards, with appropriate descriptions or examples, such as:

- Areas which would initially have complied with this definition of ‘plantation’ but which, after the passage of years, contain many or most of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems, may be classified as natural forests.
- Plantations managed to *restore** and enhance biological and habitat diversity, structural complexity and ecosystem functionality may, after the passage of years, be classified as natural forests.
- Boreal and north temperate forests which are naturally composed of only one or few tree species, in which a combination of natural and artificial regeneration is used to regenerate forest of the same native species, with most of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems of that site, may be considered as natural forest, and this regeneration is not by itself considered as conversion to plantations.

(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)

Precautionary approach: An approach requiring that when the available information indicates that *management activities** pose a threat of severe or irreversible damage to the environment or a threat to human welfare, The Organization will take explicit and effective measures to prevent the damage and avoid the risks to welfare, even when the scientific information is incomplete or inconclusive, and when the vulnerability and sensitivity of environmental values are uncertain (Source: Based on Principle 15 of Rio Declaration on Environment and Development, 1992, and Wingspread Statement on the Precautionary Principle of the Wingspread Conference, 23–25 January 1998) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Pre-harvest [condition]: The diversity, composition, and structure of the forest or plantation prior to felling timber and appurtenant activities such as *road** building (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0).

Pre-industrial forest: A native forest that has not been subjected to large scale harvesting. A forest that provides for traditional uses by Indigenous Peoples is a pre-industrial forest if it is not also used for large scale harvesting. Pre-industrial forests may have characteristics that exist because of Indigenous Peoples’ use (Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2014).

Pre-industrial condition (PIC): A natural condition representative of a pre-industrial forest. As used in Principle 6, a pre-industrial condition analysis is a data-based assessment generally providing insight into

the *forest types**, age classes and landscape condition. Sources of information used in pre-industrial condition analyses may include scientific literature, historical records (e.g. inventories, cruises, harvest volumes, dues payments), mill records, fire history, early surveyors' notebooks and maps, and using computer models to 'backcast' the composition of the pre-industrial forest (Source: FSC Canada Standard Development Group).

Principle: An essential rule or element; in FSC's case, of forest stewardship (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0).

Productive forest: All forest areas which are capable of growing commercial trees (Source: Adapted from Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources 2009. Forest Management Planning Manual).

Protection: See definition of Conservation (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Protected area: An area protected for conservation purposes by legislation, regulation, or government land-use policy to permanently control human occupancy or activity (Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004).

Protection areas: See definition of Conservation Zone (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Publicly available: In a manner easily accessible to people generally. Confidential or proprietary information is not included in material made publicly available (Source: Adapted from Collins English Dictionary, 2003 Edition) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Qualified specialist(s): Individuals whose expertise qualifies them to carry out work (e.g. assessments, design of management practices, etc.) required by the FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard, considering the following:

- professional ethics;
- accountability;
- experience;
- training;
- formal qualifications;
- familiarity with the FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard.
- familiarity with the ecosystem condition and/or cultural/social/Indigenous factors relevant to the Management Unit.

(Source: Adapted from FSC Regional Certification Standards for British Columbia 2005)

Range of natural variation (RONV): The range of dynamic change in natural ecosystems considering natural factors that affect the breadth of ecosystem condition. As used in Principle 6 a RONV analysis should portray a range of possible natural conditions of *forest types**, *age-classes** and landscape patterns with probabilities associated with the various conditions (Source: Adapted from FSC Regional Certification Standards for British Columbia 2005).

Range plan: In the context of Indicator 6.4.5 and related Indicators: The main purpose of a range plan is to outline how range-specific land and/or resource activities will be managed over space and time to ensure that *critical habitat** for boreal caribou is protected from destruction. As such, each range plan should reflect disturbance patterns on the landscape, as measured and updated by the provinces and territories, and outline the measures and steps that will be taken to manage the interaction between human disturbance, natural disturbance, and the need to maintain or establish an ongoing, dynamic state of a minimum of 65% of the range as *undisturbed habitat** at any point in time to achieve or maintain a self-sustaining local population. While the general ecological principles and *critical habitat** dynamics described in the recovery strategy apply to all ranges, individual ranges also possess a unique mix of ecological and land use conditions (e.g. population condition, habitat condition and configuration, social and legal

arrangements) that must be factored into decision making (Source: Environment and Climate Change Canada 2016).

Rare species: Species that are uncommon or scarce but not classified as threatened. These species are in geographically restricted areas or specific habitats, or are scantily scattered on a large scale. They are approximately equivalent to the IUCN (2001) category of Near Threatened (NT), including species that are close to qualifying for, or are likely to qualify for, a threatened category in the near future. They are also approximately equivalent to imperilled species. (Source: Based on IUCN [2001]. IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria: Version 3.1. IUCN Species Survival Commission. IUCN. Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK).

Ratified: The process by which an international law, convention or agreement, including multilateral environmental agreement, is legally approved by a national legislature or equivalent legal mechanism, such that the international law, convention or agreement becomes automatically part of national law or sets in motion the development of national law to give the same legal effect (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Reasonable: Judged to be fair or appropriate to the circumstances or purposes, based on general experience (Source: Shorter Oxford English Dictionary) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Recharge area: Area in which groundwater recharge occurs – where water moves downward from the surface to groundwater. An area in which water reaches the zone of saturation by surface infiltration (Source: Heath, R.C., 1984. Ground-water regions of the United States. U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2242.U.S. Department of the Interior, U.S. Geological Survey. <http://pubs.usgs.gov/wsp/wsp2242/#pdf>).

Refugia: An isolated area where extensive changes, typically due to changing climate or by disturbances such as those caused by humans, have not occurred and where plants and animals typical of a region may survive (Source: Glen Canyon Dam, Adaptive Management Program Glossary as provided on website of Glen Canyon Dam website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Representative sample areas: Portions of the Management Unit delineated for conserving or restoring viable examples of an ecosystem that would naturally occur in that geographical region (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Resilience: The ability of a system to maintain key functions and processes in the face of stresses or pressures by either resisting or adapting to change. Resilience can be applied to both ecological systems and social systems (Source: IUCN World Commission on Protected Areas (IUCN-WCPA). 2008. Establishing Marine Protected Area Networks – Making it Happen. Washington D.C.: IUCN-WCPA National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and The Nature Conservancy) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Resource manager: A person or The Organization that has been given the responsibilities by forest owners for the utilization of their forest resources, including operational planning and harvesting operations. In a group scheme, resource manager and group entity may be the same person/ organization. This is often referred to as 'resource manager type of group' or 'Type II Group') (Source: FSC-STD-30-005).

Restore / Restoration : In some cases, restore means to repair the damage done to environmental values that resulted from *management activities** or other causes. In other cases, restore means the formation of more natural conditions in sites which have been degraded or converted to other land uses (Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

The Organization is not necessarily obliged to restore those environmental values that have been affected by factors beyond the control of The Organization, for example by natural disasters, by climate change, or by the legally authorized activities of third parties, such as public infrastructure, mining, hunting or

settlement. FSC-POL-20-003 The Excision of Areas from the Scope of Certification describes the processes by which such areas may be excised from the area certified, when appropriate.

Riparian zone: Interface between land and a water body, and the vegetation associated with it (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Risk: The probability of an unacceptable negative impact arising from any activity in the Management Unit combined with its seriousness in terms of consequences (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Road: A constructed linear feature capable of supporting use by a pickup truck (Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel).

Scale: A measure of the extent to which a management activity or event affects an environmental value or a Management Unit, in time or space. An activity with a small or low spatial scale affects only a small proportion of the forest each year, an activity with a small or low temporal scale occurs only at long intervals (Source: FSC-STD- 01-001 V5-0).

Scale, intensity and risk (SIR): See individual definitions of the terms scale, intensity, and risk (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Secondary conservation lands: Areas identified through the process of addressing the requirements of Criterion 6.5 for which implementation of forest operations maintains the ecological or cultural properties for which the lands are being conserved.

Significant: For the purposes of Principle 9, HCVs 1, 2 and 6 there are three main forms of recognizing significance.

- A designation, classification or recognized conservation status, assigned by an international agency such as IUCN or Birdlife International;
- A designation by national or regional authorities, or by a responsible national conservation organization, based on its concentration of biodiversity;
- A voluntary recognition by the manager, owner or The Organization, based on available information, or of the known or suspected presence of a significant biodiversity concentration, even when not officially designated by other agencies.

Any one of these forms will justify designation as HCVs 1, 2 and 6. Many regions of the world have received recognition for their biodiversity importance, measured in many ways. Existing maps and classifications of priority areas for biodiversity conservation play an essential role in identifying the potential presence of HCVs 1, 2 and 6 (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Silvicultural system: A planned series of treatments for tending, harvesting, and re-establishing a *stand** (Source: Dictionary of Forestry, Presse de l'Université Laval, 2000).

Silviculture: The art and science of controlling the establishment, growth, composition, health and quality of forests and woodlands to meet the targeted diverse needs and values of landowners and society on a sustainable basis (Source: Nieuwenhuis, M. 2000. Terminology of Forest Management. IUFRO World Series Vol. 9. IUFRO 4.04.07 SilvaPlan and SilvaVoc) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Small-scale forest: Forests managed for timber that are less than or equal to 1000 ha in size (Source: Based on FSC-STD-01-003).

Species at risk: All species or subspecies or designated populations formally listed in schedules referenced in federal or provincial endangered species/SAR legislation or provincial wildlife/biodiversity legislation that have been classified as Endangered, Threatened, Vulnerable, Special Concern or similar designations. For this Standard the term species at risk also includes all species that have been assessed as 'at risk' designation by bodies formally recognized in federal or provincial endangered species legislation (e.g. the Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada – COSEWIC, plus equivalent provincial bodies) (Source: FSC Canada Species at Risk Technical Expert Panel).

Sphere of Control: The Sphere of Control pertains to the area or aspects for which The Organization is legally responsible, where it can legally intervene. This does not mean that the control is absolute, as government regulation and pre-existing rights can limit what The Organization can effectively do. In most cases, the Sphere of Control is the area of the Management Unit (Source: FSC-PRO-60-004 V1-0 EN Draft 1-0).

Sphere of influence: Professional associations with colleagues or businesses, agencies and Indigenous Peoples with whom individuals or businesses or agencies interact. When required by Indicators to work within one's sphere of influence, The Organizations and forest managers shall interact with their colleagues, other professionals, Indigenous Peoples, businesses and agencies, including government Ministries, Departments and other agencies, to achieve the Indicators' objectives (Source: FSC Canada *Species at Risk** Technical Expert Panel).

Stakeholder: See definitions for the terms affected stakeholder and interested stakeholder (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Stand: A community of trees possessing sufficient uniformity in composition, constitution, age, arrangement or condition to be distinguishable from adjacent communities. (Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)

Statutory law or statute law: The body of law contained in Acts of Parliament (national legislature) (Source: Oxford Dictionary of Law) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Super-canopy trees: Large, living, individual trees that tower over the forest canopy (Source: Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources 2010).

Tenure: Socially defined agreements held by individuals or groups, recognized by legal statutes or customary practice, regarding the 'bundle of rights and duties' of ownership, holding, access and/or usage of a particular land unit or the associated resources there within (such as individual trees, plant species, water, minerals, etc.) (Source: World Conservation Union [IUCN]. Glossary definitions provided on IUCN website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Threat: An indication or warning of impending or likely damage or negative impacts (Source: Based on Oxford English Dictionary) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Threatened species: Species that meet the IUCN (2001) criteria for Vulnerable (VU), Endangered (EN) or Critically Endangered (CR), and are facing a high, very high or extremely high risk of extinction in the wild. These categories may be re-interpreted for FSC purposes according to official national classifications (which have legal significance) and to local conditions and population densities (which should affect decisions about appropriate conservation measures) (Source: Adapted from IUCN. (2001). IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria: Version 3.1. IUCN Species Survival Commission. IUCN. Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK).

Timber harvesting level: The actual harvest quantity executed on the Management Unit, tracked by either volume (e.g. cubic meters or board feet) or area (e.g. hectares or acres) metrics for comparison with calculated (maximum) allowable harvest levels (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Timely manner: As promptly as circumstances reasonably allow; not intentionally postponed by The Organization; in compliance with applicable laws, contracts, licenses or invoices (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Traditional knowledge: Information, know-how, skills and practices that are developed, sustained and passed on from generation to generation within a community, often forming part of its cultural or spiritual identity (Source: based on the definition by the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO). Glossary definition as provided under Policy / Traditional Knowledge on the WIPO website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Undisturbed habitat: Habitat that is not within 500 m buffer of an anthropogenic disturbance or fire within a benchmark period. Consistent with the definition of *cumulative disturbance**, a commonly used benchmark for suitable boreal forest conditions has been 40 years, however there is uncertainty about the broad applicability of this benchmark. Different boreal forest regions are characterized by varying disturbance ecologies. A benchmark of 40 years should be used in the absence of an empirical basis for another benchmark (Source: Adapted from Environment Canada 2016).

Uphold: To acknowledge, respect, sustain and support (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Use rights: Rights for the use of resources of the Management Unit that can be defined by local custom, mutual agreements, or prescribed by other entities holding access rights. These rights may restrict the use of resources to specific levels of consumption or harvesting techniques (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0).

Verifiable targets: Specific statement, describing a desired future state or condition of an Indicator, established to measure progress towards the achievement of each of the management objectives. They are expressed as clear outcomes, such that their attainment can be verified and it is possible to determine whether they have been accomplished or not (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Very limited portion: The affected area shall not exceed 5% of the Management Unit, irrespective of whether the conversion activities have taken place prior to or after The Organization is awarded with FSC Forest Management certification (Source: FSC-POL-01-007 V1-0).

Waste materials: Unusable or unwanted substances or by-products, such as:

- Hazardous waste, including chemical waste and batteries;
- Containers;
- Motor and other fuels and oils;
- Rubbish including metals, plastics and paper; and
- Abandoned buildings, machinery and equipment.

(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

Water bodies (including water courses): Seasonal, temporary, and permanent brooks, creeks, streams, rivers, ponds, and lakes. Water bodies include riparian areas, wetlands lakes, swamps, bogs and springs (Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Watershed: An area of land that feeds water to a river, draining through the landscape into tributaries and main river channels. Also called catchments, drainage basins or river basins (Source: IUCN Definitions Document: https://cmsdata.iucn.org/downloads/en_iucn_glossary_definitions.pdf).

Wetlands: Transitional areas between terrestrial and aquatic systems in which the water table is usually at or near the surface or the land is covered by shallow water (Source: Cowarding, L.M., Carter, V., Golet, F.C., Laroe, E.T. 1979. Classification of Wetlands and Deepwater Habitats of the United States. DC US Department: Washington) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

Under the Ramsar Convention, wetlands can include tidal mudflats, natural ponds, marshes, potholes, wet meadows, bogs, peatlands, freshwater swamps, mangroves, lakes, rivers and even some coral reefs.

(Source: IUCN, No Date, IUCN Definitions – English) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

Wider Landscape: The wider landscape is the spatial landscape used to assess and determine management strategies for *Intact Forest Landscapes** within or overlapping the Management Unit. It is an area with uniform social, cultural, political, economic, and biogeological characteristics (Source: FSC Canada Standard Development Group).

Workers: All employed persons (including men and women) including part-time and seasonal *employees** of The Organization, of all ranks and categories, as well as contractors, subcontractors and overlapping

or other forest license holders who are directly involved with the forest operations on the Management Unit(s) within the scope of the certificate (e.g. forest management, planning, harvesting, *road** building, on-site processing, hauling, timber sales, etc.) (Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0).

G REFERENCES

- Andrews, Thomas D. and Susan Buggey. (2008) Authenticity in Aboriginal Cultural Landscapes. *Journal of Preservation Technology* 39 (2–3): 63–71.
- Armson, K.A., Grinnell, W.R., and Robinson, F.C. (2001) History of reforestation in Ontario. In: Wagner, R.G., and Colombo, S.J. (eds.) *Regenerating the Canadian Forest: Principles and Practice for Ontario*, pp. 3-22. Fitzhenry & Whiteside, Markham, Ontario.
- Borrows, J. (2015) Aboriginal Title and Private Property. *The Supreme Court Law Review: Osgoode's Annual Constitutional Cases Conference* 71. (Available at: <http://digitalcommons.osgoode.yorku.ca/sclr/vol71/iss1/5>)
- British Columbia Ministry of the Environment (2015) *Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs)*. <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>
- Brown, E., and Senior, M.J.M. (2014) *Common Guidance for the Management and Monitoring of High Conservation Values*. HCV Resource Network.
- Bryson, J.M. and Farnum K. Alston (2011) *Creating Your Strategic Plan* (Third Edition). Jossey-Bass, San Francisco CA.
- Buse, L.J., Wagner, R.G., and Perrin, B. (1995) Public attitudes towards forest herbicide use and the implications for public involvement. *The Forestry Chronicle* 71(5): 596-600.
- Business Dictionary (2015). best management practice (BMP). <http://www.businessdictionary.com/definition/best-management-practice-BMP.html>
- CERFO (Centre d'enseignement et de recherche en foresterie de Sainte-Foy inc.) (ed.) (2000) *Dictionnaire de la Foresterie [Dictionary of Forestry]*. Ordre des ingénieurs forestiers du Québec & Les Presses de l'Université Laval.
- Comeau, P. (2014) Effects of aerial strip spraying on mixed-wood *stand* structure and tree growth. *The Forestry Chronicle* 90(4): 479-485.
- The Constitution Act, 1982, Schedule B to the *Canada Act 1982* (UK), 1982, c 11. (Available at: <http://canlii.ca/t/ldsx>)
- Dudley, N. (ed) (2008) *Guidelines for Applying Protected Area Management Categories*. N. Dudley, (ed.). Gland, Switzerland. International Union for Conservation of Nature.
- Environment Canada (2008) *Scientific Review for the Identification of Critical Habitat for Woodland Caribou (Rangifer tarandus caribou), Boreal Population, in Canada*. Ottawa, Ontario, Canada.
- Environment Canada (2011) *Scientific Assessment to Inform the Identification of Critical Habitat for Woodland Caribou (Rangifer tarandus caribou), Boreal Population in Canada: 2011 update*. Ottawa, Ontario, Canada.
- Environment Canada (2012) *Recovery Strategy for the Woodland Caribou (Rangifer tarandus caribou), Boreal population, in Canada. Species at Risk Act Recovery Strategy Series*. Environment Canada, Ottawa.
- Environment Canada (2014) *Recovery Strategy for the Woodland Caribou, Southern Mountain population (Rangifer tarandus caribou) in Canada. Species at Risk Act Recovery Strategy Series*. Environment Canada, Ottawa.
- Environment and Climate Change Canada (2016) *Range Plan Guidance for Woodland Caribou, Boreal Population. Species at Risk Act: Policies and Guidelines Series*. Environment and Climate Change Canada, Ottawa.

FAO (2012) *Environmental impact assessment, guidelines for FAO field projects*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome.

FAO (2002) Proceedings: *Expert Meeting on Harmonizing forest-related definitions for use by various stakeholders*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome, 22-25 Jan. 2002. <http://www.fao.org/docrep/005/Y4171E/Y4171E34.htm>

FAO (2016) *Free Prior and Informed Consent. An indigenous peoples' right and a good practice for local communities. Manual for project practitioners*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, 51 pp.

FSC Canada (2026) *Intact Forest Landscape** Guidance. FSC Canada.

Forman, R.T.T., and M. Godron (1986) *Landscape Ecology*. Wiley. New York.

Harrison, Rodney and Deborah Rose. (2010) Intangible Heritage. In *Understanding Heritage and Memory*, edited by Tim Benton, 238–76.

HCV Resource Network (2013) *Common Guidance for the Identification of High Conservation Values*. HCV Resource Network. 63 pp. <https://www.hcvnetwork.org/>

Homagain, K., Shahi, C., Luckai, N., Leitch, M. F., and Bell, M. (2011) Benefit–cost analysis of vegetation management alternatives: An Ontario case study. *The Forestry Chronicle* 87(2): 260-273.

ILO (1993) *Safety in the use of chemicals at work: An ILO code of practice*. Geneva. International Labour Office.

ILO (1998) *Safety and health in forestry work: An ILO code of practice*. Geneva, International Labour Office.

ILO 169. Indigenous and Tribal Peoples Convention, (1989) (No.169) URL: http://www.ilo.org/dyn/normlex/en/f?p=NORMLEXPUB:12100:0::NO::P12100_INSTRUMENT_ID:312314

Kayahara, G.J., and Armstrong, C.L. (2015) Understanding First Nations rights and perspectives on the use of herbicides in forestry: A case study from northeastern Ontario. *The Forestry Chronicle* 91(2): 126-140.

Lund, H.G. (2002) *Definitions of Old Growth, Pristine, Climax, Ancient Forests and Similar Terms (Definitions of Forest State, Stage and Origin)*. Forest Information Services. <http://old.grida.no/geo/GEO/Geo-2-408.htm>

Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005) *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being: Policy Responses*. Findings of the Responses Working Group. Washington DC: Island Press, Pages 599-605.

OMNR (1986) *Survey of Artificial Regeneration in Northern Ontario: Summary Report for Northwestern, North Central and Northern Regions, Based on Field Sampling, 1984-1986*. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources (as cited by Armson et al., 2001).

OMNR (1988) *Survey of Artificial Regeneration in Northern Ontario: Summary Report for Northeastern and Algonquin Regions, Based on Field Sampling, 1987-1988*. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources (as cited by Armson et al., 2001).

OMNR (2014) *Forest Management Guide for Boreal Landscapes*. Published by Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources.

R. v. Powley, (2003) 2 SCR 207, 2003 SCC 43.

Stewart, C., Perpetua, G., Rayden, T., and Nussbaum, R. (2008) *Good Practice Guidelines for High Conservation Value Assessments: practical guide for practitioners and auditors*. Profest, Oxford: England.

The Firelight Group. (2025) *Indigenous Perspectives and Relationships to the Land: Considerations for Understanding Indigenous Cultural Landscapes in an FSC Context*. V2.0. 19pp.

Thiffault, N., and Roy, V. (2011) Living without herbicides in Québec (Canada): historical context, current strategy, research and challenges in forest vegetation management. *European journal of forest research* 130(1): 117-133.

Thiffault, N., Roy, V., Prément, G., Cyr, G., Jobidon, R., and Ménétrier, J. (2003) La sylviculture des plantations résineuses au Québec. *Le naturaliste canadien* 127(1): 63-80.

Thompson, D., Leach, J., Noel, M., Odsen, S., and Mihajilovich, M. (2012) Aerial forest herbicide application: Comparative assessment of risk mitigation strategies in Canada. *The Forestry Chronicle* 88(2): 176-184.

Turner, M.G. (ed.) (1987) *Landscape Heterogeneity and Disturbance*. Springer-Verlag, New York.

UNDRIP (The United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples) (2007) The United Nations General Assembly. Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples. Print. URL: http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdfhttp://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdfhttp://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdfhttp://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdfhttp://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdfhttp://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdfhttp://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdfhttp://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdfhttp://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdf

United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) (2014) *Unasylva*. Vol 53.

UN-REDD Programme (2013) *Guidelines on Free, Prior and Informed Consent*. United Nations collaborative initiative on Reducing Emissions from Deforestation and forest Degradation, 58 pp.

Wagner, R.G. (1994) Toward integrated forest vegetation management. *Journal of Forestry* 92(11): 26-30.

Wagner, R.G., Flynn, J., and Gregory, R. (1998) Public perceptions of risk and acceptability of forest vegetation management alternatives in Ontario. *The Forestry Chronicle* 74(5): 720-727.

Wikeem, B., and Miller, V. (2006) *Invasive Plants in British Columbia Protected Lands: A Strategic Plan*. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, 30 pp.

H LIST OF CONTRIBUTORS

This Standard would not have been possible without the dedication and hard work of volunteers and contributors whose provided expertise and experience, and who provided comments on the various drafts of the Standard. FSC Canada thanks those listed below and many others who may not have been listed.

FSC Canada Board of Directors:

- Tyler Bellis, Council of the Haida Nation (2017-2018)
- Arnold Bercov, Public and Private *Workers** of Canada (2013-2017)
- Julee Boan, Ontario Nature (2016-2018)
- Pier-Olivier Boudreault, Société pour la nature et les Parcs du Canada (SNAP Quebec) (2015-2017)
- John Caluori, Unifor (2017-2020)
- John Cathro, Individual (2011-2016)
- Valérie Courtois, Individual (2011-2014)
- Elston Dzus, Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc. (2016-2020)
- David Flood, Individual (2017-2019)
- Renaud Gagné, Unifor (2016)
- Catharine Grant, Individual (2017-2019)
- Satnam Manhas, Ecotrust Canada (2014-2016)
- Chris McDonell, Tembec Inc. (2011-2016)
- Chris Miller, Canadian Parks and Wilderness Society (2013-2015)
- Orrin Quinn, Ecotrust Canada (2011– 2013)
- Colin Richardson, Haida Nation (2016-2017)
- Lorraine Rekmans, Individual (2018-2020)
- Steven Sage, Kruger Products L.P. (2013-2015)
- Cameron Shiell, Public and Private *Workers** of Canada (2017-2019)
- Brenda St-Denis, Wolf Lake First Nation (2013-2017)
- Gerard Szaraz, Nature Quebec (2018-2020)
- Andrew Tremblay, Domtar Inc. (2015-2019)
- Bradley Young, National Aboriginal Forestry Association (2011-2016)

Standard Development Group (SDG):

The SDG was responsible for developing the FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Canada with common Indicators. Through the transfer and adaption of FSC International Generic Indicators (IGI), Canadian specific SMART (Specific, Measurable, Attainable, Rational, Timebound) Indicators were developed.

- Nicolas Blanchette, INCOS Strategies (QC) - Social Chamber (2017-2023)
- John Caluori, UNIFOR (QC) - Social Chamber (2016)
- Scott Davis, Eastern Ontario Model Forest (ON) - Social Chamber (2013-2016)
- Russell Diabo, Wolf Lake First Nation (QC/ON), shared seat - Aboriginal Chamber (2013-ongoing)
- Kevin Gillis, Mistik Management Ltd. (SK), shared seat - Aboriginal Chamber (2013-2022)
- André Gravel, Domtar Inc. (QC) - Economic Chamber (2017-2022)
- Satnam Manhas, Ecotrust Canada (BC), shared seat - Social Chamber (2013-2014)
- Chris McDonell, Tembec Inc. / Rayonier Advanced Materials (ON/QC) – Economic Chamber (2016-ongoing)
- Solange Nadeau, Natural Resources Canada (QC/NB) - Social Chamber (2013-ongoing)
- Dave Pearce, Wildlands league / CPAWS (ON) - Environment Chamber (2013-2026)
- M.A. (Peggy) Smith, Lakehead University (ON) - Aboriginal Chamber (2013-2024)
- Christopher J. Stagg, Canadian Forest Products Ltd. (BC) - Economic Chamber (2013-2016)
- Karen Tam Wu, Forest Ethics (BC) - Environmental Chamber (2013-2014)
- Guy Tremblay, Resolute Forest Products (QC) - Economic Chamber (2013-2017)
- Cliff Wallis, Alberta Wilderness Association (AB) - Environmental Chamber (2014-2021)

- Chris Wedeles, ArborVitae Environmental Services Ltd. (ON) – Environmental Chamber (2023-ongoing)
- Tess James, Chiefs of Ontario (ON) – Indigenous Chamber (2024-ongoing)
- Larry McDermott, Plenty Canada (ON) – Indigenous Chamber (2024-ongoing)
- Chuck Ramsey, Ecotrust Canada (BC) – Social Chamber (2024-ongoing)

Technical Expert Panels:

Technical Expert Panels (TEPs) were created to assist in providing scientific, cultural and auditing expertise and technical input on critical topics to be considered when developing normative measures within this Standard. These topics were identified through early public outreach efforts and surveys.

- *Species at Risk* (Caribou):*
 - Elston Dzus, Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc. (AB)
 - Christine Korol, Independent Consultant, formerly from Rainforest Alliance (ON)
 - Steve Morel, Mashteuiatsh's Environment Department (QC)
 - Justina Ray, Wildlife Conservation Society Canada (ON)
- Principles 6, 9 and 10 (as per new P&Cs): Ecological & Operational Consideration:
 - Tom Clark, Independent Consultant (ON) (P9 only)
 - Patrick Garneau, Tembec Inc. (QC)
 - Louis Imbeau, Université du Québec en Abitibi-Témiscamingue (QC)
 - Kevin Gillis, Mistik Management Ltd. (SK) (also SDG)
 - Dave Pearce, CPAWS, Wildlands League (ON) (also SDG)
 - Chris Ridley-Thomas, KPMG Performance Registrar Inc. (BC)
 - Kari Stuart-Smith, Canadian Forest Products Ltd. (BC)
- Principle 3: Aboriginal Rights: *Free, Prior and Informed Consent*:
 - Sandra Cardinal, Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc. (AB)
 - Geneviève Labrecque, Tembec Inc. (QC)
 - Michel Mongeon, Independent Consultant (QC)
 - M.A. (Peggy) Smith, Lakehead University (ON) (also SDG)
 - Sara Teitelbaum, Independent Consultant (QC)
- Community and Stakeholder Rights:
 - Robert Booth¹⁵, Domtar Inc. (ON) (2013-2015)
 - Steve Munro, Westwind Forest Stewardship Inc. (ON) (2015)
 - Solange Nadeau, Natural Resources Canada, CFS (QC / NB) (also SDG)
 - Harry Nelson, University of British Columbia (BC)
 - Cindy Pearce, Mountain Labyrinths Consulting (BC)
- Scale, Intensity and Risk (SIR): small and low intensity managed forests (SLIMF):
 - Olivier Côté, Syndicat des producteurs forestiers du Sud du Québec (QC)
 - Kari Easthouse, Cape Breton Private Land Partnership / NSLFFPA (NS)
 - Erik Leslie, Harrop-Procter Community Co-operative (BC)
 - Simon Mitchell, Woodland Steward (NB)
 - Dave Puttock, SilvEcon Ltd. (ON)
- *Pesticides*, Conversion and Invasive Species:*
 - Brian Callaghan, Bureau Veritas Certification (ON)

¹⁵ FSC Canada extends deep appreciation to Rob Booth for his active participation and long-term contribution to forest management and certification in Canada. He is warmly remembered and missed.

- Thom Erdle, University of New Brunswick (NB)
- Will Martin, Rising Forest Management Consulting (NS)
- Sandy Smith, University of Toronto (ON)
- Conrad Yarmoloy, Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc. (AB)
- HCV Framework Revision Sub-Committee:
 - Sophie Dallaire, Ministère des Forêts, de la Faune et des Parcs (QC)
 - Patrick Garneau, Tembec Inc. (QC)
 - Kevin Gillis, Mistik Management Ltd. (SK) (also SDG)
 - Marie-Eve Sigouin, Tembec Inc. (QC)
 - Kari Stuart-Smith, Canadian Forest Products Ltd. (BC)
- Intact Forest Landscape* and Indigenous Cultural Landscapes* Sub-Committee:
 - Elston Dzus, Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc. (AB)
 - Louis Imbeau, Université du Québec en Abitibi-Témiscamingue (QC)
 - Christine Korol, Independent Consultant (ON)
 - Geneviève Labrecque, Tembec Inc. (QC)
 - Dave Pearce, CPAWS, Wildlands League (ON) (also SDG)
 - Justina Ray, Wildlife Conservation Society Canada (ON)
 - M.A. (Peggy) Smith, Lakehead University (ON) (also SDG)

Standard Testing:

In total, 23 tests were conducted, including 2 field tests of the entire Standard and 21 desk/ scenario/field tests that explored key topics. The goal was to systematically and objectively evaluate the practicality and implementation of proposed Draft 2 Indicators by a Forest Management Enterprise.

FSC Canada thanks those organizations who participated, from:

- Abitibi River Forest Management Inc.
- Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc.
- AV Group NB
- Canadian Forest Products Ltd.
- Chantiers Chibougamau Ltée
- Domtar Inc.
- J.D. Irving, Limited
- Mistik Management Ltd.
- Nawiinginokiima Forest Management Corporation
- Resolute Forest Products
- Tembec Inc.
- Timiskaming Forest Alliance Inc.

And the participation of the testing auditors:

- Mylène Raimbault, Rainforest Alliance
- Daniel Martin, Abies Consultants Inc.
- Ugo Lapointe, SmartCert
- Chris Ridley-Thomas, KPMG Performance Registrar Inc.

Consultants:

- Mélodie Benoît-Lamarre, Traductions Hermès
- Tom Clark, CMC Ecological Consulting
- Meagan Joan Curtis, Independent Consultant
- Liana de Francesco, Independent Consultant
- Eric Forget, Nova Sylva
- Christine Korol, Independent Consultant

- Pamela Perreault, Independent Consultant
- Helena Rusak, Copy Editor Consultant
- Krystal Seedial, Consultant acting as Programs and Communications Coordinator
- Chris Wedeles, ArborVitae Environmental Services Ltd.

FSC Canada staff

- Bryce Denton, Financial Manager (2013-ongoing)
- François Dufresne, Former President (2013-2024)
- Elaine Marchand, Regional Manager, Eastern Canada (2013-2023)
- Monika Patel, President, Former Director of Programs & Communications (2013-ongoing)
- Vivian Peachey, Former Director of Standards (2013-2023)
- Orrin Quinn, Regional Manager, Western Canada (2013-2017)
- Elena Vissa, intern (2017)
- Josh Zangwill, Business Management Manager (2013-2017)
- Lauren Chisholm, Standards Development Manager (2023-ongoing)
- Tina Langilles-Hayward, Director of Policy & Standards (2025-ongoing)

Funders and main Partners

- Columbia Forest Product
- Georgia Pacific
- Government of Quebec, Ministry of Forests, Wildlife and Parks
- Ivey Foundation
- Kimberley Clark
- Natural Resources Canada, Canadian Forest Service
- Procter & Gamble
- Quebec Forest Industry Council
- Toronto Dominion Bank
- World Wildlife Fund U.S.
- First Nations of Quebec and Labrador Sustainable Development Institute (FNQLSDI)
- National Aboriginal Forestry Association (NAFA)

Stakeholder *Engagement**

FSC Canada thanks everybody who participated during the many consultations, surveys and events.

- Surveys:
 - Process design and identification of values important to stakeholders (August 2012);
 - Strategic Direction Survey and Motion (February 2013);
 - Identification of Key Indicators (Spring-Summer 2013).
- Regional workshop on Forest Management Standards Revision Process (2013):
 - North Bay, ON on April 3-4: 19 participants (SFL certificate holders);
 - Stouffville, ON on June 19: 9 participants (SLIMF certificate holders);
 - Vancouver, BC on June 27: 13 participants;
 - Quebec City, QC on July 3: 13 participants (certificate holders);
 - Fredericton, NB on July 10, 2013: 26 participants (stakeholders);
 - Halifax, NS on July 11: 19 participants (stakeholders);
 - Wendake, QC on July 18: 25 participants (FNQLSDI & Indigenous Peoples Expert Group);
 - Webinar in French on August 6: 12 participants;
 - Webinar in English on August 8: 5 participants.

- *Species at risk** and caribou (2014):
 - Consultation period from September 21 to November 28, 2014: 18 participants;
 - Webinar on October 22: 52 participants.

- Forest Management Standard, Draft 1 (2015-2016):
 - Consultation from December 1, 2015 to February 2, 2016: 49 participants;
 - Information webinars:
 - English session on January 11, 2016: 48 participants;
 - French session on January 12, 2016: 33 participants.
 - Regional meetings:
 - Quebec session in Quebec City, QC, on January 14, 2016: 35 participants;
 - Industry-led session in North Bay, ON, on January 19-20, 2016: 30 participants;
 - Maritimes session in Amherst, NS on January 20, 2016: 19 participants;
 - Ontario webinar on January 22, 2016: 17 participants;
 - British Columbia webinar on January 26, 2016: 17 participants.
 - National Aboriginal Forestry Association Forum on April 14, 2016 - FSC Canada workshop on FSC Draft 1 National Standard Review and FSC Canada FPIC Guidance Development: 35 participants.
 - Topic oriented webinar on *Free, Prior and Informed Consent* on April 29, 2016: approximately 20 participants.
 - Impact analysis of the National Forest Management Standard (on *IFL**, ICL and caribou Indicator) from July 11 to September 22, 2016: 4 participants.

- *Intact Forest Landscapes (IFL)** and *Indigenous Cultural Landscapes** (ICL):
 - FSC Canada Annual General Assembly (AGM) on November 5, 2014 in Quebec City. A Panel Discussion on *IFL** and FSC certification: 42 participants.
 - *IFL** & ICL Cross-chamber Facilitated Strategic Discussion on May 28, 2015 in Vancouver: 19 participants.
 - FSC Canada AGM on November 5, 2015 in Vancouver. Intact Forest & *Indigenous Cultural Landscapes** Discussion: 45 participants.
 - *IFL** and ICL Discussion Paper – consultation from December 1st, 2015 to February 2nd, 2016: 7 participants.
 - NAFA National Forum on April 12-14, 2016: FPIC and Indigenous Forests: Landscape, Certification and Nationhood. 109 participants.
 - *IFL** Technical guidance & ICL Discussion Paper – consultation from December 6, 2016 to February 17, 2017: 11 participants.
 - Case study for *IFL** determination in Canada (2016): 4 participants.
 - FSC Canada AGM on November 3, 2016 in Ottawa – Intact Forest & Indigenous Landscapes Discussion: 50 participants.
 - FSC Canada AGM on June 28-29, 2017 in Montreal. FSC Forest Management Forum: 75 participants.
 - FSC Canada Ontario Regional *IFL** Working Session on June 8, 2023 in Timmins, Ontario : 8 participants.
 - 3 ICL Community *Engagement** Sessions on November 16, 2023, February 21, 2024, and February 22, 2024 in Ontario : 62 participants.
 - *IFL**-ICL Technical Consultation Sessions on the Preliminary Normative Indicators Draft-1, September 10-11, 2024 and October 21, 2024 in Montreal, Quebec and online : 21 participants.
 - M23 Pilot desk-tests in May 2025 : 5 Certificate Holders.
 - *IFL** Preliminary Normative Indicators Draft 3 – consultation from August 1, 2025 to September 30, 2025: 13 participants.
 - ICL Report - consultation with FSC Canada Indigenous Chamber on September 11, 2025: 12 participants.
 - ICL Test Session on September 15-16 in Sudbury, Ontario: 6 participants.
 - ICL Preliminary Normative Indicators Draft 3 – consultation from November 18, 2025 to January 16, 2026: 6 participants.

- Forest Management Standard, Draft 2, and *Free, Prior and Informed Consent* Guidance (2016-2017):
 - Consultation from November 24 1 2016 to February 17, 2017: 30 participants.
 - Questions & Answers - Information webinars:
 - Two English sessions on February 1st and 2nd, 2017: 10 and 11 participants;
 - French session on February 3rd, 2017: 12 participants.
 - Industry-led session in North Bay, ON, on January 24-25, 2017: 29 participants.
 - FSC Canada AGM June 28-29, 2017 in Montreal. FSC Forest Management Forum: 75 participants.



FSC International Center gGmbH – Policy and Performance Unit

Adenauerallee 134

53113 Bonn

Germany

Phone: +49 -(0)228 -36766 -0

Fax: +49 -(0)228 -36766 -65

Email: country_requirements@fsc.org